

NAAC ACCREDITED



तेजस्वि नावधीतमस्तु
ISO 9001:2008 & 14001:2004

FAIRFIELD

Institute of Management & Technology

'A' Grade Institute by DHE, Govt. of NCT Delhi and Approved by the Bar Council of India and NCTE

Reference Material for Five Years

Bachelor of Law (Hons.)

Code : 038

Semester – VIII

FIMT Campus, Kapashera, New Delhi-110037, Phones : 011-25063208/09/10/11, 25066256/ 57/58/59/60
Fax : 011-250 63212 Mob. : 09312352942, 09811568155 E-mail : fimtoffice@gmail.com Website : www.fimt-ggsipu.org

DISCLAIMER : FIMT, ND has exercised due care and caution in collecting the data before publishing this Reference Material. In spite of this, if any omission, inaccuracy or any other error occurs with regards to the data contained in this reference material, FIMT, ND will not be held responsible or liable. FIMT, ND will be grateful if you could point out any such error or your suggestions which will be of great help for other readers.

INDEX

Five Years

Bachelor of Law (Hons.)

Code : 038

Semester – VIII

S.NO.	SUBJECTS	CODE	PG.NO.
1	<i>Intellectual Property Rights</i>	402	4 - 103
2	<i>Labour Law-II</i>	404	104-136
3	<i>Interpretation of Statutes</i>	406	137-167
4	<i>International Trade Law</i>	408	168-210
5	<i>Election Law</i>	412	211-230

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHT (402)

UNIT-1: COPYRIGHT

Q.1 What is copyright? Why should copyright be protected ? What are the classes of works for which copyright protection is available in India ?

Copyright is a right given by the law to creators of literary, dramatic, musical and artistic works and producers of cinematograph films and sound recordings. In fact, it is a bundle of rights including, inter alia, rights of reproduction, communication to the public, adaptation and translation of the work. There could be slight variations in the composition of the rights depending on the work.

Copyright ensures certain minimum safeguards of the rights of authors over their creations, thereby protecting and rewarding creativity. Creativity being the keystone of progress, no civilized society can afford to ignore the basic requirement of encouraging the same. Economic and social development of a society is dependent on creativity. The protection provided by copyright to the efforts of writers, artists, designers, dramatists, musicians, architects and producers of sound recordings, cinematograph films and computer software, creates an atmosphere conducive to creativity, which induces them to create more and motivates others to create.

Section 13 of the Copyright Act provides that copyright shall subsist throughout India in certain classes of works which are enumerated in the section. Copyright subsists throughout India in the following classes of works:

- Original literary, dramatic, musical and artistic works;
- Cinematograph films; and Sound recordings.

Literary Work

Not all literary works enjoy copyright protection. Section 2(o) of the Indian Copyright Act does not define the term 'literary work' as such but it includes computer programmes, tables

and compilations including computer databases within the ambit of what is described as literary work. Therefore, literary works are not limited to works of literature alone, but include all works expressed in print or writing (other than dramatic or musical works).

Also noteworthy is that the protection is not limited to words, but includes symbols and numerals. The scope of the subject matter protected as a literary work is enhanced by the fact that a work will be protected irrespective of the quality or style of the creation in question.

Points to ponder – Literary work has to have the following characteristics:

- It must be original and be fixed in some form.
- The word literature has to be understood in the same manner as it is understood in political and electioneering sense.
- Hence no literary merit is required.
- Therefore almost every kind of written material work would constitute literary work within the meaning of Section 13 (1).

Dramatic work

Section 2(h) of the Indian Copyright Act defines dramatic works to include any piece of recitation, choreographic work or entertainment in dumb show, the scenic arrangement or acting, form of which is fixed in writing or otherwise. [but does not include a cinematographic film.]

Simply put, a work of action, with or without words or music, which is capable of being performed before an audience is a dramatic work. Copyright subsists not only in the actual words of the work but in the dramatic incidents of the work as well.

The essence of a dramatic work is a story or a narrative. As a prerequisite in copyright law, for a piece of dramatic action to be protectable, a written description of the acts of the performer is essential. Therefore, a dance or pantomime by itself, sans the written description, is not capable of protection as a dramatic work.

Dramatic incidents of a show are protected as dramatic work. The work ought to have a story or a narrative for being afforded protection.

Musical Works

Section 2(p) of the Indian Copyright Act defines musical work to mean a work consisting of music and includes any graphic notation of such work but does not include any words or any action intended to be sung, spoken or performed with the music. The requirement of fixation in graphical notation within the definition of musical works has been done away with. The definition seeks to cover all forms of music irrespective of it being fixed. The definition of a musical work clarifies that it does not include words intended to be sung or spoken with the music or action intended to be performed with the music.

Point to Ponder:

If a dramatic work may include music, then will the music be entitled to a separate copyright?

Answer: Yes, notwithstanding that the music also forms an integral part of the dramatic work, it shall be entitled to a separate copyright protection as a musical work.

Artistic Works

Section 2(c) of the Indian Copyright Act defines artistic works to include A painting, a drawing (including a diagram, map, chart, or plan), an engraving or a photograph, whether or not any such work possesses any artistic quality.

A work of architecture.

Any other work of artistic craftsmanship.

To be protectable as an artistic work, the work ought to satisfy the prerequisite of 'originality' as defined in the Act. No artistic quality is required. Therefore anybody who can paint an original artwork can be entitled to copyright protection from the time the artwork has been created by him/her. Copyright law while attributing authorship to a painter does not delve into the subjective assessment of how good or poor an artwork is. That kind of assessment is left to be made by connoisseurs and dealers of art, and is understood to be outside the purview of copyright law.

Similarly works of architecture are protected as artistic work as long as they are originating from the author, i.e., the architect. Architectural drawings, diagrams, charts, maps, plans and even circuit diagrams are all protected as artistic works. However, one must take note that the building or structure which constitutes a work of architecture is built on the basis of a plan which enjoys a separate copyright apart from the copyright in the building itself.

Point to ponder:

(i) Is a straight line drawn with the help of a ruler a drawing, and therefore protectable as artistic work? Answer: In the case of *British Northrop v. Texteam Blackburn Ltd*, it was held that one should be a little slow to exclude drawings from copyrightability on the mere score of simplicity. Apart from the cases of barren and naked simplicity like a straight line, a simple work should be held to be copyrightable. A sculpture would be an example of a work of artistic craftsmanship. Copyright law affords protection to the work involving the art of carving, modeling, welding or otherwise producing figurative or abstract works of art in three dimensions as long as this work originates from the sculptor.

Point to ponder:

- (i) Are sets of machine made replicas of the Taj Mahal sold as décor items capable of being protected as works of artistic craftsmanship?

Answer: No. Machine made replicas are not considered artistic craftsmanship.

Photographs: A photographic work includes any photo lithograph or any work produced by any process analogous to photography (but does not include any part of a cinematographic film). As is the case of all copyrightable subject matter, the photograph has to be original.

Point to ponder:

- (i) Does a photograph of an already existing photograph enjoy copyright protection?

Answer: No. A photograph of an already existing photograph is not an original work. Therefore it will not be afforded copyright protection.

- (ii) Is a painting based on scenery captured in a photograph an infringement of the copyright in the photograph?

Answer: No. However if the photograph itself is found to be not original, then a painting based on such photograph is not an infringement. For discussion on this point, one may refer to the case of *Bauman v Fussell*¹² where a photograph of bird fight was held to be not original and hence a painting based on it was not an infringement.

Cinematographic Works

Section 2(f) explains that any work of visual recording on any medium produced through a process from which a moving image may be produced by any means and includes a sound recording accompanying such visual recording and 'cinematograph' shall be construed as including any work produced by any process analogous to cinematography including video films.

Points to ponder:

- (i) Does a remake of a foreign language film enjoy the same protection as the original version of the film?

Answer: A remake of a foreign language film is a derivative work and even when authorized to remake the film, in order for your remake to enjoy the same protection as the original version of the film, it must display some originality of its own.

- (ii) What if the original version of the film above is in public domain now, can you still remake it? And if you do, does your remake then enjoy a copyright protection as if it were an original?

Answer: if the original version of the film is in the public domain, anyone is free to remake it. However, in order for this remake to enjoy copyright protection it must contain sufficient new expression over and above that embodied in the older version. Originality is sine qua non of Copyright law.

- (iii) Is the e-tutorial accompanying this module a cinematographic film?

Answer: Yes. The e-tutorial is a visual recording on camera produced through a process from which a moving image of the tutor may be produced and includes a sound recording accompanying such visual recording. Therefore it is a cinematographic film.

Sound recording

Sound recording as a recording of sounds from which such sounds may be produced regardless of the medium on which such recording is made or the method by which the sounds are produced. The sound recording should not infringe copyright in any other work. Example of a sound recording is a CD-ROM.

Point to ponder:

- (i) Does the audio recording of this e-tutorial qualify for separate copyright protection as a sound recording?

Answer: Yes, if the audio recording is fixed on a medium such as a phonogram or CD ROM.

- (ii) What if there is no separate audio recording but it forms part of the audio-visual as a whole, does it enjoy protection as a sound-recording as well?

Answer: Yes, the right of the sound recording is different from the subject matter recorded as they are subjects of independent subject-matters.

What is excluded from the subject matter requirement?

Ideas, procedures, methods, systems, processes, concepts, principles, discoveries, or devices are not copyrightable subject matter.

- o However, written or recorded descriptions, explanations, or illustrations of such ideas are protectable under copyright law. Titles, names, short phrases, slogans and mere listings of ingredients or contents are not copyrightable subject matter.

- o However, some titles and words might be protected under trademark law if their use is associated with a particular product or service.

Works that are not fixed in a tangible form of expression, such as an improvised speech or performance that is not written down or otherwise recorded are not copyrightable subject matter. Works consisting entirely of information that is commonly available and contains no originality (for example, standard calendars, standard measures and rulers, lists or tables compiled from public documents or other common sources) are not copyrightable subject matter.

Q.2 What are the treaties and conventions on copyright ?

Berne convention: The Berne Convention, adopted in 1886, deals with the protection of works and the rights of their authors. It provides creators such as authors, musicians, poets, painters etc. with the means to control how their works are used, by whom, and on what terms. It is based on three basic principles and contains a series of provisions determining the minimum protection to be granted, as well as special provisions available to developing countries that want to make use of them.

The Berne Convention deals with the protection of works and the rights of their authors. It is based on **three basic principles** and contains a series of provisions determining the **minimum protection** to be granted, as well as special provisions available to **developing countries** that want to make use of them.

(1) The **three basic principles** are the following:

(a) Works originating in one of the Contracting States (that is, works the author of which is a national of such a State or works first published in such a State) must be given the same protection in each of the other Contracting States as the latter grants to the works of its own nationals (principle of "national treatment")

(b) Protection must not be conditional upon compliance with any formality (principle of "automatic" protection)

(c) Protection is independent of the existence of protection in the country of origin of the work (principle of "independence" of protection). If, however, a Contracting State provides for a longer term of protection than the minimum prescribed by the Convention and the work ceases to be protected in the country of origin, protection may be denied once protection in the country of origin ceases .

(2) The **minimum standards** of protection relate to the works and rights to be protected, and to the duration of protection:

(a) As to works, protection must include "every production in the literary, scientific and artistic domain, whatever the mode or form of its expression" (Article 2(1) of the Convention).

(b) Subject to certain allowed reservations, limitations or exceptions, the following are among the **rights** that must be recognized as exclusive rights of authorization:

- **the right to translate,**
- **the right to make adaptations and arrangements** of the work,
- **the right to perform in public** dramatic, dramatico-musical and musical works,
- **the right to recite** literary works in **public,**

- **the right to communicate to the public** the performance of such works,
- **the right to broadcast** (with the possibility that a Contracting State may provide for a mere right to equitable remuneration instead of a right of authorization),
- **the right to make reproductions** in any manner or form (with the possibility that a Contracting State may permit, in certain special cases, reproduction without authorization, provided that the reproduction does not conflict with the normal exploitation of the work and does not unreasonably prejudice the legitimate interests of the author; and the possibility that a Contracting State may provide, in the case of sound recordings of musical works, for a right to equitable remuneration),
- **the right to use the work as a basis for an audiovisual work**, and the right to reproduce, distribute, perform in public or communicate to the public that audiovisual work

The Convention also provides for "**moral rights**", that is, the right to claim authorship of the work and the right to object to any mutilation, deformation or other modification of, or other derogatory action in relation to, the work that would be prejudicial to the author's honor or reputation.

(c) As to the **duration** of protection, the general rule is that protection must be granted until the expiration of the 50th year after the author's death. There are, however, exceptions to this general rule. In the case of anonymous or pseudonymous works, the term of protection expires 50 years after the work has been lawfully made available to the public, except if the pseudonym leaves no doubt as to the author's identity or if the author discloses his or her identity during that period; in the latter case, the general rule applies. In the case of audiovisual (cinematographic) works, the minimum term of protection is 50 years after the making available of the work to the public ("release") or – failing such an event – from the creation of the work. In the case of works of applied art and photographic works, the minimum term is 25 years from the creation of the work

(3) The Berne Convention allows certain limitations and exceptions on economic rights, that is, cases in which protected works may be used without the authorization of the owner of the copyright, and without payment of compensation. These limitations are commonly referred to as "free uses" of protected works, and are set forth in Articles 9(2) (reproduction in certain special cases), 10 (quotations and use of works by way of illustration for teaching purposes), 10*bis* (reproduction of newspaper or similar articles and use of works for the purpose of reporting current events) and 11*bis*(3) (ephemeral recordings for broadcasting purposes).

It is to be noted that WTO Members, even those not party to the Berne Convention, must comply with the substantive law provisions of the Berne Convention, except that WTO Members not party to the Convention are not bound by the moral rights provisions of the Convention.

TRIPS:

The TRIPS Agreement, which came into effect on 1 January 1995, is to date the most comprehensive multilateral agreement on intellectual property.

The areas of intellectual property that it covers are: copyright and related rights (i.e. the rights of performers, producers of sound recordings and broadcasting organizations); trademarks including service marks; geographical indications including appellations of origin; industrial designs; patents including the protection of new varieties of plants; the layout-designs of integrated circuits; and undisclosed information including trade secrets and test data.

The three main features of the Agreement are:

Standards.: In respect of each of the main areas of intellectual property covered by the TRIPS Agreement, the Agreement sets out the minimum standards of protection to be provided by each Member. Each of the main elements of protection is defined, namely the subject-matter to be protected, the rights to be conferred and permissible exceptions to those rights, and the minimum duration of protection. The Agreement sets these standards by requiring, first, that the substantive obligations of the main conventions of the WIPO, the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property (Paris Convention) and the Berne Convention for the Protection of Literary and Artistic Works (Berne Convention) in their most recent versions, must be complied with. With the exception of the provisions of the Berne Convention on moral rights, all the main substantive provisions of these conventions are incorporated by reference and thus become obligations under the TRIPS Agreement between TRIPS Member countries. The relevant provisions are to be found in Articles 2.1 and 9.1 of the TRIPS Agreement, which relate, respectively, to the Paris Convention and to the Berne Convention. Secondly, the TRIPS Agreement adds a substantial number of additional obligations on

matters where the pre-existing conventions are silent or were seen as being inadequate. The TRIPS Agreement is thus sometimes referred to as a Berne and Paris-plus agreement.

Enforcement: The second main set of provisions deals with domestic procedures and remedies for the enforcement of intellectual property rights. The Agreement lays down certain general principles applicable to all IPR enforcement procedures. In addition, it contains provisions on civil and administrative procedures and remedies, provisional measures, special requirements related to border measures and criminal procedures, which specify, in a certain amount of detail, the procedures and remedies that must be available so that right holders can effectively enforce their rights.

Dispute settlement: The Agreement makes disputes between WTO Members about the respect of the TRIPS obligations subject to the WTO's dispute settlement procedures.

Substantive provisions of TRIPS on Copyright:

In addition to requiring compliance with the basic standards of the Berne Convention, the TRIPS Agreement clarifies and adds certain specific points.

Article 9.2 confirms that copyright protection shall extend to expressions and not to ideas, procedures, methods of operation or mathematical concepts as such.

Article 10.1 provides that computer programs, whether in source or object code, shall be protected as literary works under the Berne Convention (1971). This provision confirms that computer programs must be protected under copyright and that those provisions of the Berne Convention that apply to literary works shall be applied also to them. It confirms further, that the form in which a program is, whether in source or object code, does not affect the protection. The obligation to protect computer programs as literary works means e.g. that only those limitations that are applicable to literary works may be applied to computer programs. It also confirms that the general term of protection of 50 years applies to computer programs. Possible shorter terms applicable to photographic works and works of applied art may not be applied.

Article 10.2 clarifies that databases and other compilations of data or other material shall be protected as such under copyright even where the databases include data that as such are not protected under copyright. Databases are eligible for copyright protection provided that they by reason of the selection or arrangement of their contents constitute intellectual creations. The provision also confirms that databases have to be protected regardless of which form they are in, whether machine readable or other form. Furthermore, the provision clarifies that such protection shall not extend to the data or material itself, and that it shall be without prejudice to any copyright subsisting in the data or material itself.

Article 11 provides that authors shall have in respect of at least computer programs and, in certain circumstances, of cinematographic works the right to authorize or to prohibit the commercial rental to the public of originals or copies of their copyright works. With respect to cinematographic works, the exclusive rental right is subject to the so-called impairment test: a Member is excepted from the obligation unless such rental has led to widespread copying of such works which is materially impairing the exclusive right of reproduction conferred in that Member on authors and their successors in title. In respect of computer programs, the obligation does not apply to rentals where the program itself is not the essential object of the rental.

According to the general rule contained in Article 7(1) of the Berne Convention as incorporated into the TRIPS Agreement, the term of protection shall be the life of the author and 50 years after his death. Paragraphs 2 through 4 of that Article specifically allow shorter terms in certain cases. These provisions are supplemented by Article 12 of the TRIPS Agreement, which provides that whenever the term of protection of a work, other than a photographic work or a work of applied art, is calculated on a basis other than the life of a natural person, such term shall be no less than 50 years from the end of the calendar year of authorized publication, or, failing such authorized publication within 50 years from the making of the work, 50 years from the end of the calendar year of making.

Article 13 requires Members to confine limitations or exceptions to exclusive rights to certain special cases which do not conflict with a normal exploitation of the work and do not

unreasonably prejudice the legitimate interests of the right holder. This is a horizontal provision that applies to all limitations and exceptions permitted under the provisions of the Berne Convention and the Appendix thereto as incorporated into the TRIPS Agreement. The application of these limitations is permitted also under the TRIPS Agreement, but the provision makes it clear that they must be applied in a manner that does not prejudice the legitimate interests of the right holder.

Substantive Provisions of TRIPS on Related rights:

The provisions on protection of performers, producers of phonograms and broadcasting organizations are included in Article 14. According to Article 14.1, performers shall have the possibility of preventing the unauthorized fixation of their performance on a phonogram (e.g. the recording of a live musical performance). The fixation right covers only aural, not audiovisual fixations. Performers must also be in position to prevent the reproduction of such fixations. They shall also have the possibility of preventing the unauthorized broadcasting by wireless means and the communication to the public of their live performance.

In accordance with Article 14.2, Members have to grant producers of phonograms an exclusive reproduction right. In addition to this, they have to grant, in accordance with Article 14.4, an exclusive rental right at least to producers of phonograms. The provisions on rental rights apply also to any other right holders in phonograms as determined in national law. This right has the same scope as the rental right in respect of computer programs. Therefore it is not subject to the impairment test as in respect of cinematographic works. However, it is limited by a so-called grand-fathering clause, according to which a Member, which on 15 April 1994, i.e. the date of the signature of the Marrakesh Agreement, had in force a system of equitable remuneration of right holders in respect of the rental of phonograms, may maintain such system provided that the commercial rental of phonograms is not giving rise to the material impairment of the exclusive rights of reproduction of right holders.

Broadcasting organizations shall have, in accordance with Article 14.3, the right to prohibit the unauthorized fixation, the reproduction of fixations, and the rebroadcasting by wireless means of broadcasts, as well as the communication to the public of their television broadcasts. However, it is not necessary to grant such rights to broadcasting organizations, if owners of copyright in the subject-matter of broadcasts are provided with the possibility of preventing these acts, subject to the provisions of the Berne Convention.

The term of protection is at least 50 years for performers and producers of phonograms, and 20 years for broadcasting organizations (Article 14.5).

Article 14.6 provides that any Member may, in relation to the protection of performers, producers of phonograms and broadcasting organizations, provide for conditions, limitations, exceptions and reservations to the extent permitted by the Rome Convention

Geneva Convention: The Phonograms Convention, adopted in Geneva in October 1971, provides for the obligation of each Contracting State to protect a producer of phonograms who is a national of another Contracting State against the making of duplicates without that producer's consent, against the importation of such duplicates, where the making or importation is for the purpose of distribution to the public; and against the distribution of such duplicates to the public. WIPO is responsible, jointly with the International Labour Organization (ILO) and the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO), for the administration of this Convention.

Rome Convention:

The Rome Convention secures protection in performances for performers, in phonograms for producers of phonograms and in broadcasts for broadcasting organizations.

(1) Performers (actors, singers, musicians, dancers and those who perform literary or artistic works) are protected against certain acts to which they have not consented, such as the broadcasting and communication to the public of a live performance; the fixation of the live performance; the reproduction of the fixation if the original fixation was made without the

performer's consent or if the reproduction was made for purposes different from those for which consent was given.

(2) Producers of phonograms have the right to authorize or prohibit the direct or indirect reproduction of their phonograms. In the Rome Convention, “phonograms” means any exclusively aural fixation of sounds of a performance or of other sounds. Where a phonogram published for commercial purposes gives rise to secondary uses (such as broadcasting or communication to the public in any form), a single equitable remuneration must be paid by the user to the performers, to the producers of the phonograms, or to both. Contracting States are free, however, not to apply this rule or to limit its application.

(3) Broadcasting organizations have the right to authorize or prohibit certain acts, namely the rebroadcasting of their broadcasts; the fixation of their broadcasts; the reproduction of such fixations; the communication to the public of their television broadcasts if such communication is made in places accessible to the public against payment of an entrance fee.

The Rome Convention allows for limitations and exceptions to the above-mentioned rights in national laws as regards private use, use of short excerpts in connection with reporting current events, ephemeral fixation by a broadcasting organization by means of its own facilities and for its own broadcasts, use solely for the purpose of teaching or scientific research and in any other cases where national law provides exceptions to copyright in literary and artistic works. Furthermore, once a performer has consented to the incorporation of a performance in a visual or audiovisual fixation, the provisions on performers' rights have no further application.

As to duration, protection must last at least until the end of a 20-year period computed from the end of the year in which (a) the fixation was made, for phonograms and for performances incorporated therein; (b) the performance took place, for performances not incorporated in phonograms; (c) the broadcast took place. However, national laws increasingly provide for a 50-year term of protection, at least for phonograms and performances.

WCT :

The WIPO Copyright Treaty (WCT) is a special agreement under the Berne Convention which deals with the protection of works and the rights of their authors in the digital environment. In addition to the rights recognized by the Berne Convention, they are granted certain economic rights. The Treaty also deals with two subject matters to be protected by copyright: (i) computer programs, whatever the mode or form of their expression; and (ii) compilations of data or other material ("databases").

WPPT:

The WIPO Performances and Phonograms Treaty (WPPT) deals with the rights of two kinds of beneficiaries, particularly in the digital environment: (i) performers (actors, singers, musicians, etc.); and (ii) producers of phonograms (persons or legal entities that take the initiative and have the responsibility for the fixation of sounds).

UCC:

Universal Copyright Convention, (1952), convention adopted at Geneva by an international conference convened under the auspices of UNESCO, which for several years had been consulting with copyright experts from various countries. The convention came into force in 1955.

Its main features are the following: (1) no signatory nation should accord its domestic authors more favourable copyright treatment than the authors of other signatory nations, though no minimum protection for either domestic or foreign authors is stipulated; (2) a formal copyright notice must appear in all copies of a work and consist of the symbol ©, the name of the copyright owner, and the year of first publication; a signatory nation, however, might require further formalities, provided such formalities do not favour domestic over foreign works; (3) the minimum term of copyright in member nations must be the life of the author plus 25 years (except for photographic works and works of applied art, which have a 10-year term); (4) all adhering nations are required to grant an exclusive right of translation for a seven-year period, subject to a compulsory license under certain circumstances for the balance of the term of copyright.

The convention did not abrogate any other multilateral or bilateral conventions or arrangements between two or more member states. Where there are any differences, the provisions of the Universal Copyright Convention are to prevail except as regards the Berne

Convention (q.v.), which takes priority over the UCC, and conventions or arrangements between two or more American republics.

Q.3 Can copyright be assigned and licensed ?

Assignment of Copyright

- It is a pecuniary opportunity for the first owner of copyright. The assignment must specify the amount of copyright [vide Section 19(3) of the Copyright Act]. The creator shall not assign or waive the right to receive royalties to be shared on an equal basis with the assignee of copyright, subject to certain conditions. [vide Section 18(1) proviso of The Copyright Act, 1957]
- In the case of an assignment of copyright in any future work, it shall take effect only when the work comes into existence. In this regard, “assignee” includes the legal representatives of the assignee, if he dies before the work comes into existence. [vide Section 18(1) proviso of the Copyright Act]
- The ownership may be assigned either wholly or only for a part of the work in question. [vide Section 18(1) of the Act]
- The Copyright Assignment must be in writing and signed by the assignor or by his duly authorized agent. [vide Section 19(1) of the Act]
- The duration of assignment must also be specified. The Delhi High Court recognized Section 19(5) and stated that if the assignment deed is silent about the duration, it shall be deemed to be 5 years from the date of assignment
- The agreement deed may specify the territorial extent of such assignment. If silent, it shall be presumed to extend within India. [vide Section 19(6) of the Act]
- The assignment shall be subject to revision, extension, or termination on terms mutually agreed upon by the parties. [vide Section 19(3) of the Act]
- Where the assignee fails to exercise his rights within one year from the date of assignment, the assignment in respect of such right shall be deemed to have lapsed, unless otherwise specified in the assignment deed. [vide Section 19(4) of the Act]

- If the assignment is in contrary to the terms and conditions of the rights already assigned to a copyright society to which the creator is a member, it shall be deemed void. [vide Section 19(8) of the Copyright Act]
- The creator is entitled to subsequent royalties in the course of future exploitation of a cinematographic film, which includes his work, other than by way of exhibitions in a cinema hall. For example, the creator will be entitled to subsequent royalties for satellite right, home video, internet rights, the etc. Similar clause has been added for the case of sound recording. [vide Section 19(9) and 19(10) of the Copyright Act]
- In the case of a manuscript, the copyright being a personal property of the owner can be transmitted by testamentary disposition. [vide Section 20 of the Act]
- The equitable assignment is just the agreement to assign
- The assignee has the rights of- translation, abridgment, adaptation, dramatic and filmmaking in the work.
- For relinquishment of work, the author has to give notice in prescribed form to the Registrar of Copyrights or by way of public notice. On its receipt, Registrar shall publish it in the Official Gazette. With 14 days of the publication, the Registrar shall post the notice on the official website of Copyright Office, so that such notice remains in the public domain for not less than three years. Such right shall cease to exist from the date of the notice. [vide section 21 of the Copyright Act].

.Licensing of Copyright

The owner of copyright may grant a license to do any of the act in respect of which he has an exclusive right to do. The license can be classified into following categories:

Voluntary license (Section 30)

The author or the copyright owner has exclusive rights in his creative work and he alone has right to grant license with respect to such work. According to section 30 of the Copyright Act 1957, the owner of the copyright in a work may grant any interest in his copyright to any person by license in writing, which is to be signed by him or by his duly authorised agent. A

license can be granted not only in existing work but also in respect of the future work, in this situation assignment shall come into force when such future work comes into existence. Where a licensee of the copyright in a future work dies before such work comes into existence, his legal representatives shall be entitled to the benefit of the license if there is no provision to contrary.

The mode of license is like an assignment deed, with necessary adaptations and modifications in section 19 (section 30A). Therefore, like an assignment, a license deed in relation to a work should comprise of following particulars:

- a. Duration of license
- b. The rights which have been licensed
- c. Territorial extent of the licensed
- d. The quantum of royalty payable
- e. Terms regarding revision
- f. Extension and termination

Voluntary licenses can be:

Exclusive - The term exclusive license has been defined in Section 2(j) as a license which confers on the licensee and persons authorized by him, to the exclusion of all other persons, any right comprised in the copyright work.

Non-exclusive – It does not confer right of exclusion. It is mere grant of an authority to do a particular thing which otherwise would have constituted an infringement. When owner grants an exclusive right, he denudes himself of all rights and retains no claim on the economic rights so transferred.

Co-exclusive – Here the licensor grants a license to more than one licensee but agrees that it will only grant licences to a limited group of other licensees.

Sole license – Where only the licensor and the licensee can use it to the exclusion of any other third party.

Implied license – Author impliedly allows or permits the use of his work. For example, he had knowledge that someone is using his work but he did not take any action.

Compulsory License

Being a member of Berne Convention, India has incorporated the provision of compulsory license in the Copyright Act, 1957. The Act provides for grant of compulsory license for Indian work in the public interest, in certain circumstances:

Works Withheld from Public

The Indian Copyright Act provides for the grant of compulsory licences in work which has been published or performed in public. It empowers the Appellate Board to direct the Registrar to grant license, if a complaint is made to it in writing under the Act, during the subsistence of copyright stating the necessary facts which are conditions precedent to its exercise of power, provided the owner has been approached in the first instance for the grant of license and it is only if he has refused to publish or allow the republication of the work and by the reason of such refusal the work is withheld from the public. In case where two or more persons have made a complaint, the licence shall be granted to the complainant who in the opinion of the Copyright Board would serve the interest of the general public. In *Super Cassette Industries Ltd v. Entertainment Network (India) Ltd*, Mumbai⁵ the respondents who were running a radio FM channel under the brand name Radio Mirchi, made several attempts to obtain a license from Super Cassette Industries ltd (SCIL) to play its sound recordings but failed to get it. The Copyright Board ultimately issued them a compulsory license against which an appeal has been filed in the Delhi High Court. After contemplating over section 31, Court observed that in case compulsory license had to be granted to all, then there was no need of any enquiry as envisaged by section 31. The court also opined that once the copyright was in public, refusal has to be made on reasonable and valid ground. While making an order under section 31, the Board had to maintain a delicate balance between the private rights and the copyright vis-a vis- public interest. The case was sent back to the Copyright Board for fresh consideration.

Compulsory License in Unpublished or Published Work (Section 31-A)

According to this section, where the author is dead or unknown or cannot be traced , or the owner of the copyright in such work cannot be found, any person may apply to the Copyright Board for a licence to publish such work or translation thereof in any language.

Before making such an application, the applicant should publish his proposal in one issue of a daily newspaper in that language. The application to the copyright board should be in the prescribed form and accompanied by the prescribed fee and with the copy of advertisement issued.

The Copyright Board after making the certain prescribed enquires direct the Registrar of Copyright to grant license to the applicant to publish the work or its translation subject to the payment of royalty and other conditions.

Compulsory License for the Benefit of Disabled Persons (Section 31-B)

Any person working for the benefit of persons with disability on a profit basis or for business may apply in prescribed manner to the Appellate Board for a compulsory licence to publish any work in which copyright subsists for the benefit of such persons. However, where a compulsory licence has been issued, the Appellate Board may on a further application and after giving reasonable opportunity to the owners of the rights, extend the period of compulsory licence and allow the issue of more copies as it deems fit. ⁶

Statutory License for Cover Versions (Section 31-C)

Cover means a sound recording made in accordance with section 31C. Any person desirous of making a cover version, being a sound recording in respect of any literary, dramatic or musical work with the consent or licence of the owner of the work, can do so.

The person making the cover version is required to give prior notice to the owner of the copyright in such works and to the Registrar of Copyright at least 15 days in advance of making the cover version. Advance copies of all covers with which the sound recording is to be sold to be provided or royalties to be paid in advance. One royalty in respect of such sound recordings shall be paid for a minimum of fifty thousand copies of each work during each year. The Delhi High Court in *Star India Pvt Ltd v. Piyush Aggarwal*⁷, stated that sound recording included a subsequent original sound recording made from the musical and literary work and which was called a version recording i.e. a sound recording made after a first sound recording was made by use of the musical work and literary work.

Statutory Licensing for Broadcasting of Literary and Musical Work and Sound Recording (Section 31-D)

Any broadcasting organization, desirous of communicating published work to the public by way of broadcast (by way of television broadcast or radio) or a performance of any published musical/ lyrical work and sound recording, can do so by giving prior notice of this intention to the owners. The notice must specify the duration and territorial coverage of the broadcast. Corresponding royalties are required to be paid to the owner of copyrighted work. Rates of television broadcasting are different from the rate fixed with respect to radio broadcasting. At the time of fixing the rate of royalty the Copyright Board may ask the broadcasting organisation to deposit some amount of money in advance to the owner.

License to Produce and Publish Translation of Literary or Dramatic Work in any Language (Section 32)

Section 32 of the Copyright Act provides that after expiry of a period of seven years from the first publication of a literary or dramatic work, any person may apply to the Copyright Board for a license to produce and publish a translation of work. Where the work is not Indian work, any person may apply to the Board for a license to produce and publish a translation in printed or analogous form of reproduction of a literary or dramatic work in any language in general use in India after a period of three years from the first publication of such work, if such translation is required for the purpose of teaching, scholarship or research. But where translation is in a language not in general use in any developed country, such application may be made after the period of one year from such publication.

License to Reproduce and Publish Works for Certain Purposes (Section 32-A)

According to this section, any person may apply to the Copyright Board for a license to reproduce and publish any literary, scientific or artistic work after the expiration of the relevant period from the date of first publication of an edition of such work, if the copies of such edition are not made available in India , or such copies have not been put on sale in India for a period of six months to the general public or in connection with systematically instructional activities at a price reasonably related to that normally charged in India for comparable works by the owner of the right of reproduction or by any person authorised by him in this behalf.

The period prescribed are:

- Seven years for work related to fiction, poetry, drama, music or art
- Three years for works related to natural science, physical science mathematics or technology
- Five years for any other work

Q.4 What do you understand by Authorship and Ownership of Copyright?

Owner of a copyrighted work

As a general rule, the author of a work is the first owner of copyright in a work. For an original literary, musical, dramatic and artistic work, it is the person who created or composed such work and for a sound recording and cinematograph film, it is the producer of such a work. In case of a photograph, it is the photographer. For computer-generated works, the author (ie, first owner of copyright) is the person who causes the work to be created.

The exceptions to this rule are covered in section 17 of the Copyright Act, as summarised below:

- In the case of literary, dramatic or artistic works made by the author in the course of his or her employment by the proprietor of a newspaper, magazine or similar periodical under a contract of service or apprenticeship for the purpose of publication in the newspaper, magazine or periodical, then the proprietor of the publication shall be the first owner of the work for the purposes of its publication in a newspaper, magazine or similar periodical. In all other respects, the author is the first owner.
- In the case of a work that is a photograph, painting, portrait, engraving or cinematograph film that has been created at the instance of any person for valuable consideration, then such person is the first owner of the copyright in the work. However, this does not affect the rights of an author in any original literary, dramatic, musical or artistic work that is incorporated in a cinematograph film.
- In the case of *Indian Heritage Society & Anr v Meher Malhotra & Anr* [CS(OS)No. 2717 of 2011], the Delhi High Court granted a permanent injunction in favour of the plaintiff who was not the photographer, but was held to be the first owner of copyright

in the photographs. This was because it was at the plaintiff's instance that the photographs were taken for a valuable consideration paid to the photographer.

- In the case of a work created by an author in the course of his or her employment under a contract of service or apprenticeship, then the employer is the first owner of the work. However, this does not affect the rights of an author in any original literary, dramatic, musical or artistic work that is incorporated in a cinematograph film as has been clarified by the 2012 amendments to the Copyright Act.
- In the case of any address or speech delivered, the person making the address or delivering the speech, or the person on whose behalf he or she does so, is the first owner of the work.
- In the case of a government work, the government is the first owner of the work.
- In the case of a work made or first published by a public undertaking, the public undertaking will be the first owner of the work.
- In the case of works created by international organisations, the international organisation would be the first owner of the work.

Q.5 What are the available to the copyright owner. What does Copyright Infringement mean and what are the remedies available to the copyright owner in case of infringement of copyright?

Rights of a Copyright Owner

A copyright owner is entitled to the following economic rights(S.14)-

- Produce their work in public
- Publish their work
- Perform their work in public
- Translate their work
- Make any cinematograph film or a record of their work
- Broadcast their work
- Make an adaptation of their work

- Make copies of their work and distribute them
- Make derivatives of their work
- Prevent others from making unauthorized use of copyrighted work

A copyright owner is also entitled to the following moral rights (S.57)

- Right of paternity: refers to a right of an author to claim authorship of work and a right to prevent all others from claiming authorship of his work
- Right of integrity: integrity empowers the author to prevent distortion, mutilation or other alterations of his work, or any other action in relation to said work, which would be prejudicial to his honour or reputation

Meaning of Copyright Infringement

Use of any copyrighted work without the permission of the owner amounts to copyright infringement. Infringement occurs when a person intentionally or unintentionally copies/uses the work of another without credit. Infringement is usually classified into two categories- primary infringement and secondary infringement.

Primary infringement is the actual act of copying, while secondary infringement includes unauthorised dealings like selling the pirated books, importing, etc. In the case of secondary infringement, knowledge of infringement is present with the infringer while in the case of primary infringement, knowledge may or may not be present.

When does Copyright infringement occur?

In India, copyright infringement occurs when-

1. Copies of copyrighted work are made for sale/hire without permission or authority, like in the case of online piracy
2. A copyrighted work is performed in a public place
3. Infringing copies are distributed for the purpose of trade and personal gains
4. Public exhibition of infringing copies by way of trade prejudicial to the owner
5. Infringing copies are imported from another country into India

Acts Not Constituting Infringement [S. 52(1)]

The Copyright Act provides certain exceptions to infringement. The object of these provisions is to enable the encouragement of private study and research and promotion of education. They provide defenses in an action for infringement. The exceptions come under the following categories:

- reproduction for use in judicial proceedings and for use of members of the legislature,
- publication of short passages, restricted reproduction or performance for educational purposes,
- making of records under license from Copyright Board on payment of royalty,
- playing of records or performance by a club or society for the benefit of the members of religious institutions,
- reproduction of an article on current economic, political, social or religious matters in newspapers, magazines etc,
- reproduction of a few copies for use in libraries or for research or private study,
- matters published in official gazettes including Act of Parliament (subject to certain conditions) or its translation,
- making of a drawing, engraving or photograph of an architectural work of art, or a sculpture kept in a public place,
- use of artistic work in a cinematography film,
- use of an artistic work (author not the owner of copyright) by the author of any mould, cast, sketch, plan, model, etc., made by him for the work,
- making of an object in three dimension of an artistic work in two dimensions subject to certain condition, and
- Reconstruction of a building in accordance with architectural drawings.
- Fair dealing without commercial benefits.[S.52(1)(a)]

Actions against Copyright Infringement

The key requirements for taking an action against copyright infringement include:

1. Proof of ownership of copyright
2. Substantial similarity between the original and the infringed copy
3. Copying amounts to improper appropriation

The first thing to do is to send a legal notice for copyright infringement to the person or entity guilty of copyright violation. In the case of online copyright infringement, a takedown notice may be sent to the person or company involved. A copyright owner can take several actions against copyright infringement under the civil and criminal laws

Remedies for Copyright Infringement

Civil remedy– The civil actions against copyright infringement are given under Section 55 of the Copyright Act, 1957. Under a civil action against copyright infringement, the court can grant the following reliefs:

The copyright owner is entitled to remedies by way of injunctions, damages and accounts against the Infringer.

Criminal Remedy– Copyright infringement is a criminal offence under Section 63 of the Copyright Act which envisages that any person who knowingly infringes or abets the infringement of the copyright in a work shall be punishable with imprisonment for a term which shall not be less than six months but which may extended to three years and with fine which shall not be less than fifty thousand rupees but which may extend to two lakh rupees.

UNIT-II : TRADEMARK

Q.1 What is Trademark. What are the types of Trademark?

What is a Trademark?

A “**Trade mark**” [TM] is defined under Section 2(zb) of the Indian Trademarks Act, 1999 as “*mark capable of being represented graphically and which is capable of distinguishing the goods or services of one person from those of others and may include a shape of goods, their packaging, and combination of colors.*”

Simply put, a trademark may include a device, brand, heading, label, ticket, name, signature, word, letter, numeral, shape of goods, packaging or combination of colors or any such

combinations. (Section 2(m)). The only qualification for a trademark being its capacity to *distinguish the goods or services of one person from that of another*.

In order to understand the requirements for choosing a proper trademark for your business, you may refer to our previous blog post [that cannot be registered](#).

What are the types of Trademarks?

A trademark may be divided into the following categories:

1. **Word marks:** Word marks may be words letters or numerals. A word mark gives the proprietor a right only in the word, letter or numerical. No right is sought with respect to the representation of the mark.

2. **Device marks:** Where the trademark lies in the unique representation of a word, letter or numerical, it is called as a device mark.

3. **Service Marks:** A service mark is nothing but a mark that distinguishes the services of one person from that of another. Service marks do not represent goods, but the services offered by a person/ company.

They are used in a service business where actual goods under the mark are not traded. It is a mechanism available to protect marks used in the service industry. Thus businesses providing services like computer hardware and software assembly and maintenance, restaurant and hotel services, courier and transport, beauty and health care, advertising, publishing, educational and the like are now in a position to protect their names and marks from being misused by others. As service marks, the substantive and procedural rules governing the service marks are fundamentally the same.

4. **Collective Marks:** Marks being used by a group of companies can now be protected by the group collectively. Collective marks are used to inform the public about a particular feature of the product for which the collective mark is used. The owner of such marks may be an association or public institution or cooperative. Collective marks are also used to promote particular products which have certain characteristics specific to the producer in a given region.



5. **Certification Marks:** Certification marks are used to define standards. They assure the consumers that the product meets certain prescribed standards. The presence of a certification mark on a product indicates that the product has successfully gone through a standard test specified. It assures the consumer that the manufacturers have gone through an audit process to ensure the quality of the product. For example, Toys, Electrical goods, etc. have such marking that indicates the safety and the quality of the product.

The difference between the certification mark and the collective mark is that the collective mark is used by a particular enterprise or members of the association while a certification mark may be used by anybody who meets the defined standards.



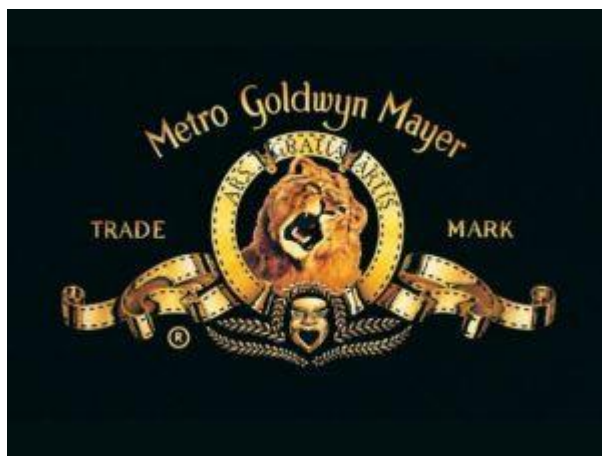
6. **Well-known marks:** When a mark is easily recognized among a large percentage of the population it achieves the trademark status of a well-known mark. Well-known marks enjoy greater protection. Persons will not be able to register or use marks, which are imitations of well-known trademarks. In order to be well-known, a trademark needs to be known/recognized by a relevant section of people. These people include actual or potential customers, people involved in the distribution and business service dealing with the goods/services. Now you can declare your mark as well known marks and learn more details [here](#).

7. **Unconventional Trademarks:** A **non-conventional trademark**, also known as a **nontraditional trademark**, is any new type of trademark which does not belong to a pre-existing, conventional category of trade mark, and which is often difficult to register, but which may nevertheless fulfill the essential trademark function of uniquely identifying the commercial origin of products or services.

Unconventional trademarks include the following categories::

Colour Trademark: If a particular color has become a distinctive feature indicating the goods of a particular trader it can be registered as a trademark. For example, Red Wine.

Sound Marks: Signs which are perceived by hearing and which is distinguishable by their distinctive and exclusive sound can be registered as sound marks. For example, the MGM's roar of a lion.



Shape Marks: When the shape of goods, packaging has some distinctive feature it can be registered.



Smell Marks: When the smell is distinctive and cannot be mistaken for an associated product it can be registered as a smell mark. For example, Perfumes

Q. 2 What are the grounds for refusal of registration of a trade mark ?

Registration of a trade mark can be refused on the following grounds:

Absolute Grounds

Section 9(1) to (3) of the Trade Marks Act lists the absolute grounds for refusal of registration.

Section 9(1) prohibits the registration of those trade marks-

(a) which are devoid of any distinctive character, that is to say, not capable of distinguishing the goods or services of one person from those of another person;

(b) which consist exclusively of marks or indications which may serve in trade to designate the kind, quality, quantity, intended purpose, values, geographical origin or the time of production of the goods or rendering of the service or other characteristics of the goods or services; or

(c) which consist exclusively of marks or indications which have become customary in the current language or in the bona fide and established practice of the trade. However, a trade mark shall not be refused registration, if the mark has in fact acquired a distinctive character as a result of the use made of it or is a well known trade mark before the date of application for registration.

The basis of Section 9(1) is that a trader should not obtain a statutory monopoly through registration in a word which another trader might legitimately wish to use. A competitor should of course be entitled to make bonafide use of the word, to describe his goods or the place of manufacture. If a word, however, through use has become clearly associated in public mind with the goods/service of a particular trader, then it could not be legitimately used as a trade mark by a competitor. For this purpose the onus is on the applicant to show by cogent evidence that the trade mark, by reason of use has acquired distinctiveness in relation to his goods or services.

If a trade mark is devoid of distinctive character, the same can not be registered. In *Ambalal Sarbhai Enterprises Limited v. Tata Oil Mills Company Limited* 1988 OTC 73 Bom, it was held that the word PROMIX was distinctive. The Court held that even though there are many trade marks in the register with the prefix PRO which is common to the trade, the applicants have particularly coined the word PROMIX and the same was not known earlier. Applicants are the proprietors of a series of trade marks having prefixed PRO as a leading distinguishing feature. Their trade mark is distinctive and so can be registered under the Act.

Length of user is a material factor to acquire distinctiveness in a trade mark (*Durga Dutt Sharma v. Navaratna Pharmaceutical Laboratories*, AIR 1962 Ker 156). This view was affirmed in *Kaviraj Pandit Durga Dutt Sharma v. Navaratna Pharmaceuticals Laboratories*, AIR 1965 SC 980. The Apex Court held that the length of user would, of course, be a material factor for the mark to become distinctive.

In *Mahendra & Mahendra Paper Mills Ltd. v. Mahindra & Mahendra Ltd.*, AIR 2002 SC 117, the Supreme Court observed

"...the name has acquired a distinctiveness and a secondary meaning in the business or trade circles. People have come associate the name "Mahindra" with a certain standard of goods and services. Any attempt by another person to use the name in business and trade circles is likely to and in probability will create an impression of a connection with the plaintiffs' group

of companies. Such user may also affect the plaintiff prejudicially in its business and trading activities."

Section 9(2) states that a mark shall not be registered as a trade mark if —

- (a) it is of such nature as to deceive the public or cause confusion;
- (b) it contains or comprises of any matter likely to hurt the religious susceptibilities of any class or section of the citizens of India;
- (c) it comprises or contains scandalous or obscene matter;
- (d) its use is prohibited under the Emblems and Names (Prevention of Improper Use) Act, 1950.

Under Section 9(2), if the confusion arises from any factor whatsoever, even without involvement of any other mark or there being no similarity with any other mark, the registration may still be refused if the impugned mark is of such nature that it will cause confusion. For a successful opposition the opponent has to establish by proper evidence that its mark had acquired reputation by use and the mark of the applicant if registered is likely to cause confusion (*Anglo-French Drug Co. v. Brihans Laboratories*, 1995 IPLR 7).

The medical preparations sold at the prescription by doctors and supplied by qualified pharmacists have been considered a special case for determining deceptive similarity. The test was not of the ordinary customers but whether the pharmacists or doctors would be confused. Therefore, in the field of drugs and chemicals, the names with small variations are allowed. In *Burrogh Wellcome v. Uni Sole Pvt. Ltd.*, 1999 PTC 188, the Bombay High Court has applied the test of person of ordinary intelligence as against doctors and pharmacists. The Court took the judicial notice of the fact that various medicines which are required by law to be sold per prescription, in actual practice they are sold without such prescription in spite of the mandate of the law.

Section 9(3) prohibits registration of a mark, if it consists exclusively of shape of goods which results from the nature of the goods themselves or which is necessary to obtain a technical result or which gives substantial value to the goods. It is, however, explained that the nature of goods or services in relation to which the trade mark is used or proposed to be used shall not be a ground for refusal of registration.

Section 9(3) is intended to prevent permanent monopolies being created under the Trade Marks Act, by reason of trade marks constituted by the shape of goods giving the proprietor a permanent and substantial advantage over his potential competitors. It is considered that will create unacceptable distortions in the market.

In order to avoid an objection, a mark constituted by a shape must be sufficiently different from a shape which is - (a) characteristic of the product; (b) the norm or customary in the sector concerned. In other words, the shape should not be descriptive and must stand out from the crowd, and in the case of new product development must not be a shape likely to be taken for the product concerned.

The fact that functional claim has been previously made in a patent application will be prima facie evidence that those aspects of the shape covered by the patent claim are necessary to achieve a technical result. This will attract objection under section 9(3)(b). The test is whether there are any significant aspects of the shape or its arrangement which are not only attributable to the achievement of a technical result.

The shape of an ornamental lamp, for example would appear to add substantial value to the goods by making it attractive. This would attract objection under section 9(3)(c) and also 9(3)(a).

Relative Grounds

Section 11 of the Trade Marks Act stipulates that where there exists a likelihood of confusion on the part of the public because of the identity with an earlier trade mark or similarity of goods or services, the trade mark shall not be registered. The registration of a mark which is merely reproduction or imitation of a well-known mark is also prohibited. Sub-section (3) prohibits the registration of a trade mark if or to the extent that, its use in India will be prevented by law of passing off or under the law of copyright unless the proprietor of the earlier trade mark consents to such registration.

The term “earlier trade mark” as per the Explanation appended to this Section means a registered trade mark or an international registration or a convention application which has a date of application earlier than the trade mark in question, or a trade mark, which on the date of application for registration or on the date of priority claimed was entitled to protection as a well known trade mark.

The proprietor of earlier trade mark is entitled to oppose the registration of a trade mark and prove it. In the opposition proceeding the Registrar shall protect a well-known trade mark against identical or similar trade marks and take into consideration the bad faith of either the applicant or the opponent affecting the rights relating to the trade mark. Further, the section also lays down the factors which the Registrar is required to take into account while determining the status of a well-known trade mark. The Section also lays down the facts to be considered by the Registrar in determining whether a trade mark is known or recognised in a relevant section of the public.

What is a well known trade mark, the Delhi High Court held in *Tata Sons Ltd. v. Mr. Md. Jawed & Anron* (March, 2011) held that a well known trade mark is a mark which is widely known to the relevant section of the general public and enjoys a comparatively high reputation amongst them. Further, the Court observed that the owner of a well known trade mark may (i) seek cancellation or (ii) prevent registration of a trade mark which is same or similar to the well known mark irrespective of whether the impugned mark is in relation to identical or similar goods or services or in relation to other categories of goods or services. He may also prevent others from incorporating the well known trade mark as a part of their corporate name/business name. Even if a well known trade mark is not registered in India, its owner may avail these rights in respect of the trade mark registered/used or sought to be registered/used in India, provided that the well known mark is otherwise known to or recognized by the relevant section of public in India. The Trade Marks Act, 1999 accords a statutory protection to well known marks, irrespective of whether they are Indian marks or foreign marks. The existence of actual confusion or a risk of confusion is, however, necessary for the protection of a well known trade mark, as a result of infringement.

O.3 How a Trademark is Registered?

The application must be finalized in the office of the Trademarks Registry within whose territorial limits the principal place of business in India, of the applicant is located. After application for registration of a trademark is complete the same is sent for examination.

Examination of Trade Mark application will cover examination as to compliance with–

1. Filing requirements governed by procedure prescribed under the Trade Marks Act and Trade Marks Rules
2. Substantive requirements for registrability of the mark

In particular, the official assigned examination duties will scrutinize the application as to-

1. whether the application has been filed in the manner as prescribed in the Trade Marks Rules 2002
2. whether any same/similar mark in respect of same/similar goods/services is there on record
3. whether the trademark applied for registration can be accepted for registration under the Trade Marks Act 1999
4. whether any restriction, condition or limitation is required to be imposed.

The Examiner (includes a Senior Examiner) doing the examination work will give a consolidated 'Examination Report' mentioning the objections (if any) as to the acceptance of application for registration; or as the case may be, forward a proposal to accept the application with or without any restriction, condition or limitation on the use of trademark. A computer generated 'Search Report' short listing conflicting marks on record will be attached with the Examination Report. The examiner will mention all existing deficiencies in the application and will raise all applicable objections to the acceptance of application for registration of trademark. The applicant (it includes the applicant's authorized agent) is required to respond to the Examiner's objection(s) within a period of one month from the date of receipt of Examination Report. The reply to the Examination Report together with evidence of use of the trademark in India and other documents attached with the reply will be duly considered. In case the objections cannot be waived an opportunity of a Hearing will be given to the applicant. The application will thereafter be accepted with or without any restriction, condition or limitation on the use of trademark; or as the case may be, it will be refused for registration. The decision as to acceptance or refusal of the application will be communicated to the applicant. The accepted application will thereafter be advertised in the Trade Mark Journal

2.3 Acceptance & Advertisement

Where an application is Advertised before Acceptance and there is no opposition, it is a necessary statutory requirement that the application should be accepted on the file by the Registrar or an authorized officer before the mark is allowed to be registered.

Section 20 of the Trade Marks Act 1999 states that- When an application for registration of a trade mark has been accepted whether absolutely or subject to conditions or limitations, the Registrar shall, as soon as may be after acceptance, cause the application as accepted together with the conditions or limitations, if any, subject to which it has been accepted, to be advertised in the prescribed manner: Proviso to section 20 enables the Registrar to cause an application for registration of trade mark to be Advertised Before Acceptance if it relates to a trade mark to which subsection (1) of section 9 and sub-sections (1) and (2) of section 11 apply. Such a course can also be adopted by the Registrar in any other case where it appears to him to be expedient “by reason of any exceptional circumstances so to do”.

It is felt that this provision should not be routinely used by the Examiner to advertise trade marks even in cases where there is strong objection to the registration of the mark under section 9 or 11. After advertisement if there is no opposition the mark may generally proceed to registration. Thus, the provision for **Advertisement Before Acceptance**, as the law itself enacts, should be invoked in “exceptional circumstances”. Where the Examiner finds strong evidence of bonafide commercial adoption and use of the mark, the Examiner or the Hearing Officer may “Accept” the application and order the mark to be advertised “as accepted”. A cross notice may be issued to the registered proprietor or the prior applicant in suitable cases or when there is request on form TM-58. This will enable him to oppose the registration, if he chooses to do so.

Section 19 enables the Registrar to withdraw acceptance of an application in error or in circumstances that the trade mark should not be registered or should be registered subject to conditions or limitations

2.4 Opposition

The individual application are vital, it is to be noted that ‘Precedents’ are of great value, though not decisive.

A Notice of Opposition to the registration of a trade mark must be given within three months from the date of advertisement or re-advertisement of the application in the Trade Marks Journal or within such further period not exceeding one month in the aggregate as the Registrar, on application made to him on Form TM-44 may allow [(See Rule 47(6)).

Section 11(3) provides as follows:

A trade mark shall not be registered if, or to the extent that, its use in India is liable to be prevented by virtue of any law in particular the law of passing off protecting an unregistered trade mark used in the course of trade; or by virtue of law of copyright. Objection under section 11(3) call for evidence of facts from which it could be properly concluded that normal and fair use of the trade mark for the purpose of distinguishing the goods/services of the applicant from those of others was liable to be prevented at the date of application for registration of the later mark by enforcement of rights in a passing off action or under copyright law.

Section 91 of the Trade Marks Act, provides for an appeal against an order or decision of the Registrar to the Intellectual Property Appellate Board (IPAB). In some cases, parties may also invoke the writ jurisdiction of High Courts. It is obvious, therefore, that whenever the Registrar or any officer acting for him passes an order as a tribunal under the Act it should be a reasoned and a speaking order.[See Rule 40 of Trade Marks Rules, 2002].

In this reference, the principle laid down by the Supreme Court, “The Court insists upon disclosure of reasons in support of the order on two grounds – one, that the party aggrieved in a proceeding before the High Court or this Court has the opportunity to demonstrate that the reasons which persuaded the authority to reject its case were erroneous; the other, that the obligation to record reasons operates as a deterrent against possible arbitrary actions by the executive authority invested with judicial power” (Travancore Rayon v. Union of India AIR 1971 SC 862, at p.866)

2.5 Procedural formalities

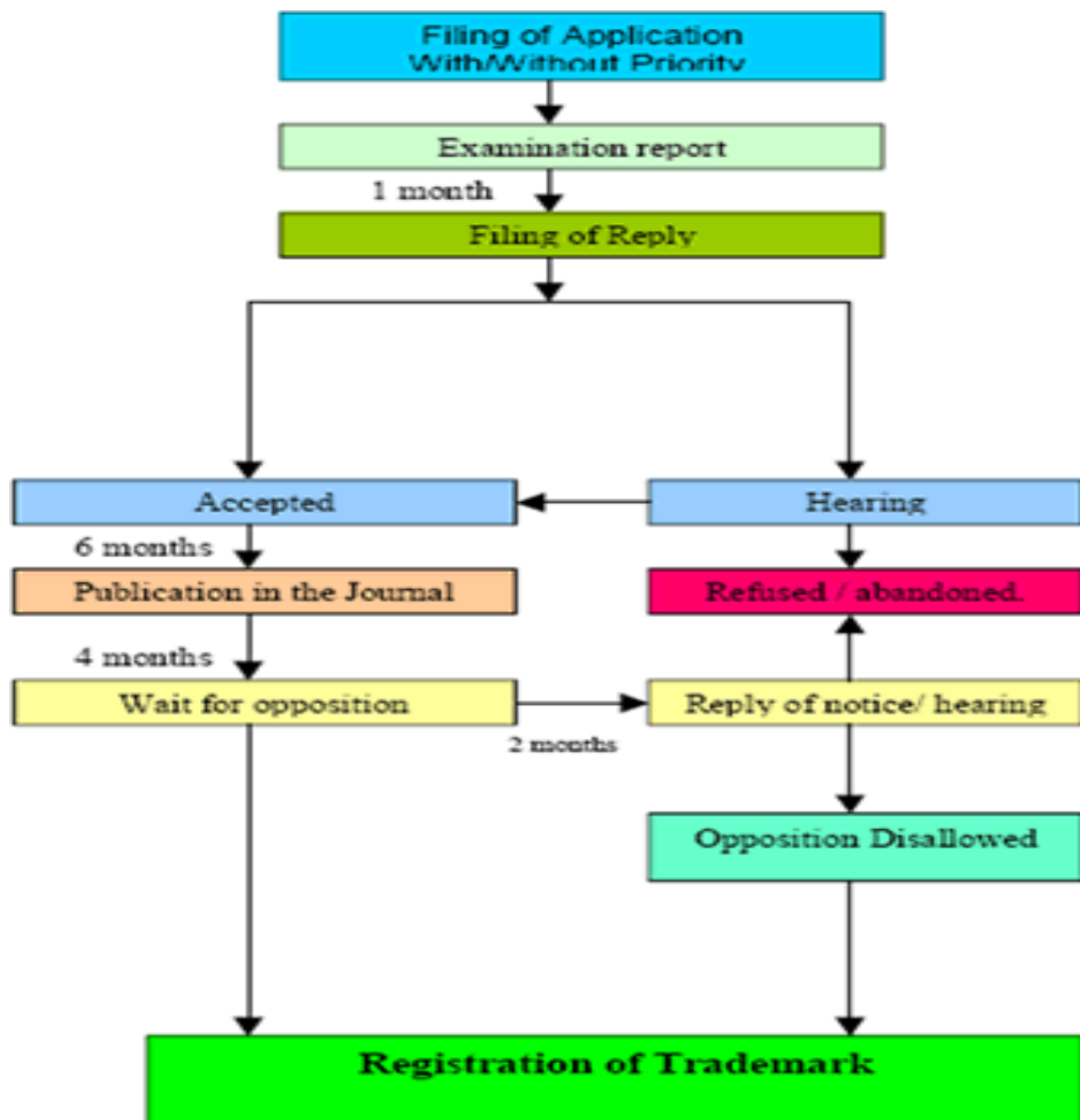
The examination of trade marks for acceptability under the Trade Marks Act

1999 must be by reference to the provisions of that Act and Rules structured there under taking into account the recognized practice of the Registry and the law as laid down or approved by the Intellectual Property Appellate Board (IPAB) and by Courts in India which is binding on the Registrar.

India accepted the International Convention for Protection of Intellectual Property and TRIPS Agreement, the administration of the Act will need to be in harmony with international practice. Accordingly, European Trade Mark Reports (ETMRs), Fleet Street Reports (FSRs) the US Trade Marks Reports will continue to be followed by India. The Registry in India broadly matches up with the practice existing in the U.K.

An Application for registration of registered user will be filed by the registered proprietor and proposed user jointly on form TM-28 along with the prescribed fees together with the following documents.

1. Agreement in writing between the registered proprietor and proposed user or duly authenticated copy thereof with respect to the permitted use of the trade mark. It is to be noted that in terms of sub-rule (4) of Rule 80 no application will be entertained unless the same has been filed within 6 months from the date of agreement.
2. Document and correspondence, if any mentioned in the agreement or authenticated copies thereof
3. An affidavit of the registered proprietor or by some person authorized, testifying to the genuineness of the documents accompanying the application.



Section 50(1)(d) empowers the Registrar to cancel the registration of a registered user of his own motion or on an application of any person on the ground that any stipulation in the agreement regarding the quality of goods/services is either not being enforced or not being complied with. Section 47 provides two alternative grounds for removal of mark on ground of non-use. Correction or amendment similar to those envisaged by section 58(1) in respect of registered trade mark is contemplated under sub-section (2) in respect of the registered users. Such as, a) any error in the name, address or description of the registered proprietor of a trade mark, or any other entry relating to the trade mark; b) any change in the name, address or description of the person who is registered as proprietor; c) cancellation of the entry of a trade mark; d)

striking out of any goods or classes of goods or services in respect of which the mark is registered. Rule 91 prescribes the procedure for the purpose. Section 59(1) expressly prohibits any addition or alteration in a manner substantially affecting the identity of the registered trade mark. Section 25(4) provides for restoration of removed trade mark to the register and its renewal upto one year after the expiration of the last registration. In such cases, the request has to be made on form TM-13 along with prescribed fees plus the applicable renewal fees otherwise sub-section (3) of section 25 enables the registered proprietor to get the registration renewed for a period of 10 years, on an application made in the prescribed form (TM-10) and payment of prescribed fee and surcharge within six months from the expiration of last registration.

Q.4 “Internet domain names are also entitle to protection as ‘Trademark’.

Comment.?

The Internet Domain Names have now become much more than mere representing the websites of different companies on the Internet. Today, in this age of well-developed information technology and worldwide businesses through Internet, these domain names have attained the status of being business identifiers and promoters. Since the commercial activities on the Internet are to go on increasing day by day, the importance and usefulness of domain names too, are to be enhanced for the purposes of greater publicity, popularity, and profitability of businesses in all economic sectors. According to Bill Gates, the founder of Microsoft, "Domains have and will continue to go up in value faster than any other commodity ever known to man". Broadly, the functions of domain names are now quite similar to the functions of a trademark or service mark, for these purposes. Ours this very informative web-article offers rich and hugely beneficial and securing information regarding the registration and protection of the domain names as trademarks, with a view to help and serve people, companies, and professions pertaining to diverse occupational and economic fields.

Functions of A Domain Name and A Trademark

A Domain Name is a quite user-friendly form of an Internet Protocol (IP) address; the technical IP address of this being invisible to the viewers. Addresses to the Internet Web Servers are assigned and managed through the Domain Name System (DNS), the globally

distributed internet database administered by ICANN. An example of a domain name is "inta.org". The name portion of a domain name [here, inta] is called as the Second-Level Name, and this unique and scintillating name is to be created or selected by the domain name applicant. The end portion of a domain name [here, .org] is termed as the Top-Level Domain (TLD); and is further classified into the categories of the Generic Top-Level Domains (gTLDs) and the Country-Code Top-Level Domains (ccTLDs). Some of the most common and popular categories of the top-level domains are **.com**; **.org**; **.gov**; **.net**; **.in**; etc.

Generally, a domain name performs the same functions online, which a trademark serves in the offline business dealings and transactions. While the trademark is striking graphic signifier of your product or company, the domain name is magnificent navigator to your company on the internet, and the virtual image of your business. Duly registered and protected trademark and domain name can offer the following main benefits: ---

- A trademark or service mark promotes and protects your brand name, while a registered and protected domain name provides you protection against any unauthorized use of your domain name by any person or entity.
- Trademark supports the face value of your business or profession, while a domain name increases access value of your business from any remote place of the world over.
- A trademark (or service mark) makes your any product (or service) prominent in the concerned marketplace, while a domain name can also function to deliver your product or service to your customers worldwide.

Thus, a well-protected domain name is certainly immensely helpful for security, worldwide prominence, and profitability of a business, quite like an internationally protected trademark or service mark. Hence, proper registration and protection of both the trademark and domain name are advisable and imperative.

Can Internet Domain Names be Registered and Protected As Trademarks or Service Marks?

Yes, domain names can also be registered and protected as trademarks or service marks at the national and international levels, provided that the domain names do satisfy all conditions to be duly registered and protected like the trademark and service marks.

Any unique internet domain name which is capable of identifying and distinguishing goods or services of a company from that of other companies, and can also act as a reliable source identifier for the concerned goods or services on the internet, may be registered and thus protected as trademark, if it satisfies all other rules and requirements for registration which are commonly applicable to the trademarks and service marks. Again, for proper registration of a domain name as a trademark or service mark, this must be unambiguously unique from all other domains names and well-known trademarks on the internet, so that it does not mislead, confuse, or deceive customers of other companies engaged in the same or different fields, or violate public order or morality. Such cases may give rise to instances of trademark infringement litigation. Exclusive information about registration and protection of domain names as trademarks in India and abroad is provided in the sections below.

In this connection, the following judgment of the Honorable Supreme Courts of India is worth mentioning, which was extended in the case of **Satyam Infoway Ltd. Vs Sifynet Solutions Pvt. Ltd.** [Where the matter for consideration before this Apex Court of India was whether Internet Domain Names are recognizable as other Intellectual Properties such as Trademarks]: --- "The original role of a domain name was no doubt to provide an address for computers on the internet. But the internet has developed from a mere means of communication to a mode of carrying on commercial activity. With the increase of commercial activity on the internet, a domain name is also used as a business identifier. Therefore, the domain name not only serves as an address for internet communication but also identifies the specific internet site, and distinguishes specific businesses or services of different companies. Consequently a domain name as an address must, of necessity, be peculiar and unique and where a domain name is used in connection with a business, the value of maintaining an exclusive identity becomes critical. "As more and more commercial enterprises trade or advertise their presence on the web, domain names have become more and more valuable and the potential for dispute is high."

Trademark Protection Vs. Domain Name Protection

Trademarks or service marks are provided recognition and protection in only those national and international jurisdictions, where these are properly registered; these may not attain trademark protection worldwide. The domain names as trademarks or service marks are registered and protected at the entire global level supremely by only one organization which is ICANN [Internet Corporation for Assigned Names and Numbers], along with the national and international protection under the directly concerned national Trademark Law and diverse International Trademark Treaties of the world. Any national or international trademark law is not fully capable of protecting a domain name in countries of the world over. To meet this vital objective, the ICANN with support of the WIPO (World Intellectual Property Organization) prescribed the following two strong and strict measures --- a rigorous and censorious system of registration of domain names with accredited registrars [by ICANN]; and an efficient and efficacious dispute resolution policy, named as the Uniform Domain Name Disputes Resolution Policy (UDNDR Policy).

For a dispute resolution under the UDNDR Policy of October 1999, a person or entity may formally complain before the competent administration-dispute-resolution services providers [listed by ICANN under Rule 4(a)], that:

1. Any specified domain name is very strikingly or confusingly similar to a previously registered domain name or trademark of the complainant
2. Any accused domain name has been registered, and is blatantly being used in bad faith
3. There exists any certain case of trademark infringement against the complainant

Today, the domain name registrars duly authorized by the ICANN, operate a dispute resolution procedure under the UDNDR Policy, for the purposes of providing efficient and rigorous remedy against bad faith and abusive registration of domain names which violate the trademark rights of the complainants.

Protection of Domain Names in India

The protection of domain names in India has been deeply felt and approved by the law courts of the country, like the protection enjoyed by the trademarks or service marks; provided that the proposed domain name fulfils all requirements to be properly registered under the Indian trademark law. Any person or business or professional entity may obtain protection to

his/her/its newly created domain name in entire India under the Trade Marks Act of 1999 and the Trade Marks Rules of 2002, and all amendments made in these so far. For the purpose of worldwide protection of registered domain names, the concerned people or entity has to follow the above-mentioned system or procedure. Here, it may be reiterated that a well-protected domain name will offer to the registrant all those legitimate rights and authorities which are commonly availed by the owners of registered trademarks or services marks in India. The rights to take rigorous and drastic actions against any infringement cases connected with the registered and protected domain name within the Indian jurisdictions, are essentially covered by these rights granted to the registrant of domain name by any regional Trademarks Office of India.

In this connection, the opinion and judgment of the law courts of India, essentially including the Apex Court, are expressed explicitly during the handling of many domain-name related law cases, particularly the cases of **Satyam Infoway Ltd. Vs Sifynet Solutions Pvt. Ltd.**; and the **Tata Sons Ltd. Vs Manukosuri and Others**.

Q.5 Difference Between Infringement and Passing off of Trademark?

Infringement of Trademark:

Any person who trespasses the rights conferred by registration of a trademark infringes the registered trademark for example by adopting identical or deceptively similar trademark. In case a trademark is not registered then the trademark can be protected under passing off. The idea used for infringement is the same used for passing off but the two differ in two fundamental aspects; passing off is concerned with only one method of passing off, namely use of a trademark; once a mark is shown to offend, the user of it cannot escape by showing that he has adopted the name outside the area where the proprietor of the actual mark has attained distinction. The present Act of 1999 now gives recognition to certain concepts like dilution of trademark, erosion of distinctive character of trademark and damage to reputation. These were not covered under

the previous Act of 1958. The concept of dilution has been dealt with in the I module under the “concepts” subtopic.

Essentials:

When the rights conferred upon registration are trespassed, amounts to infringement. An infringement should constitute the following essentials (a) the infringing mark must be either identical with or deceptively similar to the registered trade mark; (b) the goods or services in respect of which it is used must be specifically covered by the registrar.

It was held in Parker Knoll that the marks have to be very similar marks have so as to “nearly resemble” the registered mark and “likely” to deceive or cause confusion among consumers. It is not a necessity that it should be intended to deceive or intended to cause confusion. It is the probable effect on ordinary people that have to be taken into consideration for determining deception or confusion.

The question of similarity between two trademarks and the likelihood of deception or confusion arising from their use is not to be decided in vacuo but to be determined always in the background of the surrounding circumstances. The following factors are taken into consideration:

- The nature of the marks, i.e. whether they are words, coined or descriptive or non-descriptive, surname or geographical name, devices, letters or numerals or a combination of two or more of the above,
- The degree of resemblance between the marks and essential features, i.e. similarity in phonetic, visual and in idea,
- The nature of the goods in respect of which they are used or likely to be used as trademarks,
- The similarity in the nature, character and purpose of the goods of the rival traders,

- The class of purchasers who are likely to buy the goods bearing the marks, their level of education and intelligence, and the degree of care they are likely to exercise in purchasing the goods,
- The mode of purchase of the goods or of placing orders for the goods,
- Any other surrounding circumstances.

To determine infringement the following factors are taken into consideration:

- If the mark nearly resembles the plaintiff's registered trademark so as to cause confusion or deceive the general public.
- Once it is found that the defendant has used the trademark nothing said or done by the defendant can make available the trademark to the defendant since the infringement consists in using the trademark, as trademark is indicative of the origin.
- Even if the trademark is descriptive and not registrable and the defendant too uses a name that is descriptive but confusingly similar to the previous trademark, the defendant cannot use it as a defence to a claim for infringement action. Thus plaintiffs are not deprived of statutory provision of the fact that the defendants may be using a descriptive work "as a trademark".
- The proprietor does not necessarily have to establish instances of actual confusion or deception arising from the defendant's use of the mark.
- Whether certain trademark causes confusion is a question of fact and degree in each case. The court has to take into account all the relevant circumstances in the comparison of the marks. The risk of deception must be real and not fanciful. The factors that are taken into consideration are the degree of similarity of the two marks in sight and sound, looking not just at the registered mark as a whole but also at its essential or distinguishing features or the essential idea behind it the whole range of potential customers for the

goods protected by the registered mark and not just customers for the goods of the particular type marketed by the defendant's goods, the manner in which the purchasers of the goods are normally made. All circumstances of the trades must be considered.

The question of resemblance and the likelihood of deception are considered by reference to the whole mark and by the distinguishing essential feature. Intention is not essential to determine infringement but it does help further in determination of infringement. It has also been held that any mark has to be sufficiently big to be seen by the eye. For example unauthorised printing of labels is held to be infringement of the registered trademark, use of plaintiff's mark on reconditioned goods also may constitute infringement even if it is made clear that the goods are not original but only reconditioned, import or possession of the spuriously marked goods for personal consumption but not for trading purposes, may not constitute infringement. Import of such goods for sale in India is an infringement in the country of origin. Even the use of a registered trademark as part of the trading style of another dealing in the same kind of goods is held to be infringement of the mark under section 29(3) of the 1999 Act.

In Amritdhara Pharmacy the question of phonetic similarity was elaborately discussed. It was alleged by the plaintiff that the two words Amritdhara and Lakshmandhara were phonetically so similar so as to cause confusion among consumers and hence Lakshmandhara should not be allowed registration. The names were adopted as tradenames for the same type of medicines. The plaintiff stated that this was a clear case of passing off because they were being used for the same type of medicines due to phonetic similarity for an average Indian consumer and an ultimate purchaser. The Court stated that the words 'Amrit' and 'dhara' were common words in the Hindi language and the combined word 'Amritdhara' meant 'current of nectar' or the 'flow of nectar'; the two words 'Lakshman' and 'dhara' were also well-known common words and combined together they meant 'current or flow of Lakshman'. The Court also held that it is not right to take a part of the word and compare it with a

part of the other word; one word must be considered as a whole and compared with the other word as whole. It also stated that it is a dangerous method to adopt to divide the word up and seek to distinguish a portion of it from a portion of the other word.' It took into consideration the ordinary Indian Villager or townsman who perhaps might know Lakshman, the story of the Ramayana being familiar to him; but doubted if would apply it in cases as the present one. They would go more by the similarity of the two names in the context of the widely known medicinal preparation which he wants for his ailments.

The Court then held that both the words are overall and phonetically similar.

The test of infringement was laid down elaborately in Durga Dutt's case, as follows:

1. The onus would be on the plaintiff,
2. Where the two marks are identical, no further question to establish that there is infringement arises,
3. Where the two marks are not identical the plaintiff would have to establish that the mark used by the defendant so nearly resembles the plaintiff's registered trademark as is likely to deceive or cause confusion in relation to goods in respect of which it is registered,
4. The court has to compare the two marks; the degree of resemblance. The purpose of the comparison is for determining whether the essential features of the plaintiff's trademark are to be found used by the defendant. The base is to find out if the mark used by the defendant as a whole is deceptively similar to that of the registered mark of the plaintiff.

The identification of the essential features of the mark is in essence a question of fact and depends on the judgment of the court based on evidence led before it as regards the usage of it he trade.

Passing Off:

In case of infringement of unregistered trademark the passing off can be used a common law remedy of torts. The plaintiff has to prove that his goods or services have a reputation and goodwill in the market. The basis of passing off is false representation. In an action of passing off it is not necessary that there should be absolute identity between the articles of the plaintiff and the defendant. The basis for an action is deception and false representation. There has to be direct false representation, adoption of trademark which is the same or colourable imitation of the trademark of the rival traders, adoption of an essential part of the rival trader's name, copying the get-up or colour scheme of the label used by the trader, imitating the design or shape of the goods and adopting the word or name by which the rival trader's goods or business is known in the market.

The concept now has changed from protecting the manufacturer's goodwill and reputation to the concept of protecting the manufacturer's monetary benefit and to bar unfair reaping by others of what has been sowed by the manufacturer. The ultimate concept remains same that is to protect the consumers from the ultimate confusion while buying the goods, services etc. In the early nineteenth century tort as a remedy was available for name, trademark or product or business but now it is inclusive of television, radio programme, and other non-trading activities like professional associations, business of looking after children, organizing exhibitions, beauty contests, so on and so forth.

In the English case of Erven Warnink, which is also known as the Advocat case, the essential characteristics which must be present in order to create a valid cause of action for passing off are:

1. misrepresentation,
2. that is made by a person in the course of trade,
3. to prospective customers of his or ultimate consumers of goods or services,
4. supplied by him which is calculated to injure the business or good-will of another trader, and
5. which causes actual damage to a business or goodwill of the trader by whom the action is brought.

General Principles:

a) Misrepresentation

No one is entitled to represent his goods or business as being the goods or business of another whether such representation is made by the use of any mark, name, sign, or symbol device or other means. It is therefore an actionable wrong to pass off by whatever means that result is achieved.

Where the ultimate purchasers get confused from the overall getup of the unregistered mark, it is sufficient to claim for passing off though a prerequisite is to have goodwill in an unregistered trademark. It is an invasion of the proprietary rights vested in the plaintiff. The misrepresentation should also have deceived or is likely to deceive and that the plaintiff is likely to suffer damage by such deception. Mere confusion that does not lead to sale is not sufficient.” This is a condition precedent to success in an action for passing off where the alleged representation consists of the use of a name in connection with the goods, that the name should have become distinctive of the plaintiff’s goods.

b) Representation that defendant’s goods or business is connected with the goods or business of plaintiffs

In certain circumstances passing off action lies when there is a representation there is a connection or association with the goods or business of the plaintiff. The association or connection must be sufficiently close to affect the goodwill of the injured party. The test is: would consumers believe or at any rate would some of them believe that it is associated with the same source of manufacture as the plaintiff’s product.

The principle of passing off unlike the case in early nineteenth century now encompasses other descriptive material such as slogans or visual images, radio, television or trademark of a product or a business. A plaintiff does not have to be in direct competition with the defendant to suffer injury. The passing off action has also been applied to professional associations, business of looking after children, organizing exhibitions and beauty contests.

Passing off is a wrongful invasion of a right of property vested in the plaintiff, but the property which is protected by an action for passing off is not the plaintiff’s proprietary right in the name or get-up which the defendant has misappropriated but the goodwill and reputation of his business which is likely to be harmed by the defendant’s misrepresentation.

Essential elements of passing off

There are three elements of the tort of passing off which are as follows:

(1)Reputation (2) deception (3) damage.

These are sometimes called the “classical trinity”.

Once a misrepresentation is established it is reasonable to infer that customers of the goods bought them on that misrepresentation unless there is evidence to the contrary.

In the recent case of *Reckitt & Colman* it was stated that according to the law of passing off no man could pass off his goods as those of another. It may be expressed in terms of the elements which the plaintiff in such an action has to prove in order to succeed. Firstly goodwill has to be established or reputation attached to the foods or services which he supplies in the mind of the purchasing public by association with the identifying “get-up” (whether it consists simply of a brand name or a trade description, or the individual features of labeling or packaging) under which his particular goods or services are offered to the public, such that the get up is recognized by the public as distinctive specifically of the plaintiffs goods or services. Secondly, he must demonstrate a misrepresentation by the defendant to the public leading or likely to lead the public into believing that goods or services offered by him are the goods or services of the plaintiff. Whether the public is aware of the plaintiff’s identity as the manufacturer or supplier of the goods or services is immaterial, so long as they are identified with a particular source which is in fact the plaintiffs. Thirdly, he must demonstrate that he suffers or that he is likely to suffer damage by reason of the erroneous belief engendered by the defendant’s misrepresentation that the source of the defendant’s goods or services is the same as the source of those offered by the plaintiff. There are two necessary elements, first a misrepresentation, express or implied but not necessary fraudulent and second a consequent likelihood of damage to the plaintiff’s goodwill. Misrepresentation may be express or implied. The cases on implied misrepresentation is more common than express misrepresentation. It is however very difficult to classify all the possible ways in which a man may make the false representation relied on.

Difference Between Infringement And Passing Off

An action for Trademark infringement is a statutory right, conferred on the registered proprietor of a registered Trademark for the vindication of the exclusive right to its use in relation to those goods. Passing off is a common law remedy, an action for deceit that is passing off by a person of his own goods as those of another. In the case of infringement what needs to be proved is that the plaintiff was the first to adopt and use the mark and the mark is registered. In a passing off action the use of a mark for a sufficient long time so as to be known to the public is one of the conditions precedent to the filing of such action. The use by the defendant of the Trademark of the plaintiff is not essential in an action for passing off but is the sine qua non in the case of an action for infringement.

In infringement action the issue is whether the defendant is using a Trademark which is the same, or which is a colourable imitation of the plaintiffs registered mark. Whereas in the passing off goods, the important thing is whether the defendant is selling goods so marked as to be designed or calculated to mislead the purchasers that they are goods of the plaintiffs.

Passing off action is based solely on deception. In an infringement action the plaintiff must make out that the use of the defendant mark is likely to deceive but where the similarity between two marks is so close and the court reaches the conclusion that there is an imitation no further evidence is required to establish that the plaintiff's rights are violated. If the essential features of the trade mark of a plaintiff have been adopted by the defendant, the fact that the get-up, packaging, other writing or marks on the goods show marked differences or indicate clearly a trade origin different from that of the registered proprietor of the mark is immaterial.

In an infringement, the defendant must use the offending mark on the same goods for which the plaintiff's mark is registered. In passing off, the defendant's goods need not be same it may be allied or even different. In an infringement action, an injunction can be issued against using the TM. In a passing off action the defendant is prevented not only from using the TM but is also stopped from using it in such a way to pass off his goods as that of another. In an infringement case the main issue that the court is concerned with is what the defendant is doing and not with what it might do.

The statutory recognition and protection of well known TMs and tests for their determination have also been inserted so as to protect the interests of persons who have adopted and used the mark in bonafide manner. The new law defines well-known TMs in relation to any goods or services, a mark which has become so to the substantial segment of the public which uses such goods or receives such services that the use of such TM in relation to other goods or services would be likely to be taken as indicating a connection in the course of trade or rendering of services between those goods or services and a person using the mark in relation to the first mentioned goods and services.

The jurisdiction of district court to entertain suits for infringement and passing off has been made same as for infringement of copyright thus enabling a plaintiff to file the suit in the district court within whose jurisdiction he resides or carries on business. There has also been substantial enhancement of punishments for offences relating to trade marks and false description.

NAAC ACCREDITED UNIT-III : PATENTS

Q.1 What are the Patentable and Non- Patentable Inventions?

Section 2(1)(j) "invention" means a new product or process involving an inventive step and capable of industrial application;

Section 2(1)(ja) "inventive step" means a feature of an invention that involves technical advance as compared to the existing knowledge or having economic significance or both and that makes the invention not obvious to a person skilled in the art

Section 2(1)(ac) capable of industrial application", in relation to an invention, means that the invention is capable of being made or used in an industry;

Section 2(1)(l) "new invention" means any invention or technology which has not been anticipated by publication in any document or used in the country or elsewhere in the world before the date of filing of patent application with complete specification, i.e., the subject matter has not fallen in public domain or that it does not form part of the state of the art;

Patentability requirements of an invention

- Newness or novelty
- Inventive step or non-obviousness requirement
- Capable of Industrial application

Newness or novelty requirement

Sections 2(1)(l) and 2(1)(j) of the Patents Act highlight the difference between a new invention and an invention. A 'new invention' is defined as:

any invention or technology which has not been anticipated by publication in any document or used in the country or elsewhere in the world before the date of filing of patent application with complete specification, i.e., the subject matter has not fallen in public domain or that it does not form part of the state of the art.

An invention is said to be novel if all elements of a claim of the invention are not anticipated by a single prior art which is published, or used or known to public.

Refer our section on “working with patent agent or attorney” on patent drafting for understanding importance of claim and the role they play in patent.

inventive step or non obviousness

Now let’s talk about inventive step, also known as non obviousness test for your innovative idea.

An inventive step is said to be present in your invention when it has a technical advance as compared to the existing knowledge (that is state of the art of your field of invention) or it has economic significance or your invention has both such that it makes your invention non-obvious to a person skilled in the art.

So, we need to identify feature of our invention that is either technically advance or it is economically significant or both, when it is compared to state of the art or existing knowledge such that our invention becomes non-obvious to a person skilled in the art.

Technical advance means some feature of the invention is having advancement which is technical in nature as compared to the existing knowledge.

A person skilled in the art is a person who has average skills from your domain. For example if your invention is related to mechanical device the person skilled in the art would be from mechanical background. If there are multiple technologies used in the invention then a person skilled in the art is assumed to have all the knowledge (that is available and known to public) from the technologies involved. This is to assess the inventiveness of the invention.

The idea here is our invention should not be obvious to a person skilled in the art (that is an average person from a background of field of invention).

In other words, considering the state of the art (things already known to public) and assuming the person skilled in the art does not have any knowledge about our invention, if that person

skilled in the art was asked to solve the problem (that our invention solves), then the our invention should not come as a natural suggestion by that person skilled in the art. Which ultimately means invention should not be obvious. This is in essence known as non obviousness test.

And one of the way to qualify for the non obviousness test of patentability is mentioning and proving to examiner that our invention is solving a the long standing problem in the industry. Pointing out that the problem existed for long time and there was a need to solve the problem, also mentioning existing prior arts and patent references who tried before but could not solve up to certain extent (stating problems with the prior arts in the background of the invention while drafting patent) and since the problem has not solved till now it ultimately means the solution to the problem that is our invention was Not obvious.

Now, this is not your job as an inventor to do all this, in fact this is responsibility of a patent agent or patent attorney working on your invention. an experienced patent professional would be asking you for required details and technicality of your invention and using such information while drafting patent application for your invention which gives a very good chance for your patent application to stand through examination stage till the grant of patent.

Industrial application or utility

Section2(1)(ac) capable of industrial application", in relation to an invention, means that the invention is capable of being made or used in an industry;

Industrial application means invention is capable of being made or used in any kind of industry. This is also known as usefulness, a patented invention should be able to be produced on a large scale that is it could be created, used and repeated.

Now if you observe the word in definition is Capable of industrial application, which means it need not be mass produced right now, but has capability of industrial application in future. In general this patentability requirement of usefulness or industrial application is not much of a problem to prove.

Non- Patentable Inventions:

Section 3:

Section 3 (a): Frivolous inventions

Section 3 (b): Inventions which are contrary to Law or Mortality or injurious to public health

Section 3 (c): Mere discovery of a scientific principle or formulation of an abstract theory.

Section 3 (d): The mere discovery of a new form of a known substance which does not result in the enhancement of the known efficacy of that substance or the mere discovery of any new property or new use for a known substance or of the mere use of a known process, machine or apparatus unless such known process results in a new product or employs at least one new reactant is not an invention.

Section 3(d) provides an explanatory clause to make it more clear which reads as follows:

(Explanation- For the purposes of this clause, salts, esters, ethers, polymorphs, metabolites, pure form, particle size, isomers, mixtures of isomers, complexes, combinations and other derivatives of known substance shall be considered to be the same substance, unless they differ significantly in properties with regard to efficacy)

The complete specification must clearly and categorically bring out in the description, as to how the subject matter differs significantly in properties with regard to efficacy from the known substance. .

In a recent landmark decision (Novartis AG Vs. Union of India, W.P. No. 24760/06), the Madras High Court held that efficacy means therapeutic efficacy. It was held that going by the meaning for the word efficacy and therapeutic what the patent applicant is expected to show is, how effective the new discovery made would be in healing a disease or having a good effect on the body. In other words, as the Court further clarified, the patent applicant is definitely aware as to what is the therapeutic effect of the drug for which he had already got a patent and what is the difference between the therapeutic effect of the patented drug and the drug in respect of which patent is asked for.

Section 3 (e): A substance obtained by a mere admixture resulting only in the aggregation of the properties of the components thereof or a process for producing such substance is not an invention.

A mere aggregation of features must be distinguished from a combination invention. The existence of a combination invention requires that the relationship between the features or groups of features be one of functional reciprocity or that they show a combinative effect beyond the sum of their individual effects. The features should be functionally linked together which is the actual characteristic of a combination invention.

An admixture resulting in synergistic properties is not considered as mere admixture, e.g., a soap, detergent, lubricant and polymer composition etc, and hence may be considered to be patentable.

Section 3 (f): Mere arrangement or re-arrangement of known devices

The Manual of Patent Practice & Procedure says that in order to be patentable, an improvement on something known before or a combination of different matters already known, should be something more than a mere workshop improvement; and must independently satisfy the test of invention or an inventive step. To be patentable, the improvement or the combination must produce a new result, or a new article or a better or cheaper article than before.

Section 3 (h): Method of agriculture or horticulture

Section 3 (i): Any process for the medicinal, surgical, curative, prophylactic diagnostic therapeutic or othertreatment of human being or any process for a similar treatment of animals to render them free of disease or to increase their economic value or that of their products is not patentable

a) Medicinal methods: As for example a process of administering medicines orally, or through injectables, or topically or through a dermal patch.

(b) Surgical methods: As for example a stitch-free incision for cataract removal.

(c) Curative methods: As for example a method of cleaning plaque from teeth.

(d) Prophylactic methods: As for example a method of vaccination.

(e) Diagnostic methods: Diagnosis is the identification of the nature of a medical illness, usually by investigating its history and symptoms and by applying tests.

Therapeutic methods: The term —therapy includes prevention as well as treatment or cure of disease. Therefore, the process relating to therapy may be considered as a method of treatment and as such not patentable.

Further examples of subject matters excluded under this provision are: any operation on the body, which requires the skill and knowledge of a surgeon and includes treatments such as cosmetic treatment, the termination of pregnancy, castration, sterilization, artificial insemination, embryo transplants, treatments for experimental and research purposes and the removal of organs, skin or bone marrow from a living donor, any therapy or diagnosis practiced on the human or animal body and further includes methods of abortion, induction of labour, control of estrus or menstrual regulation.

Application of substances to the body for purely cosmetic purposes is not therapy.

Patent may however be obtained for surgical, therapeutic or diagnostic instrument or apparatus. Also the manufacture of prostheses or artificial limbs and taking measurements thereof on the human body are patentable.

Section 3 (j): Plants and animals in whole or any part thereof other than micro-organisms but including seeds, varieties and species and essentially biological processes for production or propagation of plants and animals are not inventions.

The subject matters excluded under this provision are:

- (a) plants in whole or in part
- (b) animals in whole or in part
- (c) seeds
- (d) varieties and species of plants and animals
- (e) essentially biological process(es) for production or propagation of plants and animals.

Microorganisms, other than the ones discovered from the nature, may be patentable. For instance, genetically modified microorganisms may be patentable subject to other requirements of Patentability.

Plant varieties are provided protection in India under the provisions of the Protection of Plant Varieties and Farmers Rights Act, 2002.

Section 3 (k): A mathematical or business method or a computer programme per se or algorithms are not inventions and hence not patentable.

Software per se not patentable. Technical applicability of the software claimed as a process or method claim, is required to be defined in relation with the particular hardware components.

Computer Implemented Inventions can be patented if:

They have technical character and solve a technical problem.

They are new.

They involve an inventive technical contribution to the prior art.

The method claims should clearly define the steps involved in carrying out the invention. It should have a technical character.

The claims should incorporate the details regarding the mode of the implementation of the invention via hardware or software, for better clarity.

The claim orienting towards a process/method should contain a hardware or machine limitation.

Business Methods claimed in any form are not patentable subject matter. The term Business Methods involves whole gamut of activities in a commercial or industrial enterprise relating to transaction of goods or services. With the development of technology, business activities have grown tremendously through e-commerce and related B2B and B2C business transactions. The claims are at times drafted not directly as business methods but apparently with some technical features such as internet, networks, satellites, telecommunications etc. This exclusion applies to all business methods and, therefore, if in substance the claims relate to business methods, even with the help of technology, they are not considered to be a patentable subject matter.

Algorithms in all forms including but not limited to, a set of rules or procedures or any sequence of steps or any method expressed by way of a finite list of defined instructions, whether for solving a problem or otherwise, and whether employing a logical, arithmetical or computational method, recursive or otherwise, are excluded from patentability.

Patent applications, with computer programme as a subject matter, are first examined with respect to (b), (c) and (d) above. If the subject matter of an application does not fall under these categories, then, the subject matter is examined with a view to decide whether it is a computer programme per se.

If the claimed subject matter in a patent application is only a computer programme, it is considered as a computer programme per se and hence not patentable. Claims directed at computer programme products are computer programmes per se stored in a computer readable medium and as such are not allowable. Even if the claims, inter alia, contain a subject matter which is not a computer programme, it is examined whether such subject matter is sufficiently disclosed in the specification and forms an essential part of the invention.

If the subject matter of a patent application is not found excluded under the foregoing provisions, it shall be examined with respect to other criteria of patentability.

Section 3 (l): A literary, dramatic, musical or artistic work or any other aesthetic creation whatsoever including cinematographic works and television productions is not patentable.

Section 3 (m): A mere scheme or rule or method of performing mental act or method of playing game is not patentable.

Section 3 (n): A presentation of information is not patentable.

Section 3 (o) Topography of integrated circuits is not patentable.

Section 3 (p) An invention which in effect, is traditional knowledge or which is an aggregation or duplication of known properties of traditionally known component or components is not patentable.

Section 4: deals with inventions relating to atomic energy, that are also not patentable and that fall within sub-section (1) of section 20 of the Atomic Energy Act, 1962.

Q.2 How Patent is Registered in India?

Step 1: Write down the invention (idea or concept) with as much details as possible

Collect all the information about your invention such as:

- Area of invention
- Description of the invention what it does
- How does it work
- Advantages of the invention

Ideally, if you have worked on the invention during research and development phase you should have something call lab record duly signed with date by you and respective authority.

Step 2: include drawings, diagrams or sketches explaining working of invention

The drawings and diagrams should be designed so as to explain the working of the invention in better way with visual illustrations. They play an important role in patent application.

Step 3: check whether the invention is patentable subject matter

All inventions may not be patentable, as per Indian patent act there are certain inventions that are not patentable explained in detail in([inventions not patentable](#))

Step 4a: Patentability search

The next step would be finding out whether your invention meets all patentability criteria as per Indian patent act? That is,

- Novelty
- Non-obviousness
- Industrial application
- Enabling

The detailed explanation for patentability criteria is given here ([what are patentability criteria's](#)). The patentability opinion is provided by the patent professionals up on conducting extensive search and forming patentability report.

Step 4b: Decide whether to go ahead with patent

The patentability report and opinion helps you decide whether to go ahead with the patent or not, chances are what you thought as novel might already been patented or know to public in some form of information. Hence this reports saves lots of time, efforts and cost of the inventor by helping him decide whether to go ahead with the patent filing process or not.

Step 5: Draft (write) patent application

In case you are at very early stage in the research and development for your invention, then you can go for **provisional application**. It gives following benefits:

- Secures filing date
- 12 months of time to file complete specification
- Low cost

After filing provisional application, you secure the filing date which is very crucial in patent world. You get 12 months of time to come up with the complete specification, up on expiry of 12 months your patent application will be abandoned.

When you complete the required documents and your research work is at level where you can have prototype and experimental results to prove your inventive step you can file complete specification with patent application.

Filing the provisional specification is the optional step, if you are at the stage where you have complete information about your invention then you can directly go for complete specification.

Step 6: Publication of the application

Up on filing the complete specification along with application for patent, the application is published after 18 months of first filing.

An early publication request can be made along with prescribed fees if you do not wish to wait till the expiry of 18 months from the date of filing for publishing your patent application.

Generally the patent application is published within a month from request for early publication.

Step 7: Request for examination

The patent application is examined only after receiving request for examination that is RFE. Upon receiving this request the controller gives your patent application to a patent examiner who examines the patent application with different patentability criteria like:

- Patentable subject matter
- Novelty
- Non-obviousness
- Inventive step
- Industrial application
- Enabling

The examiner creates a first examination report of the patent application upon reviewing it for above terms. This is called patent prosecution. Everything happening to patent application before grant of patent is generally called as patent prosecution.

The first examination report submitted to controller by examiner generally contains prior arts (existing documents before the date of filing) which are similar to the claimed invention, and same is reported to patent applicant.

Step 8: respond to objections

Pre Grant Opposition:

Section 25(1) of the Patent (Amendment) Act 2005 provides provisions for pre grant opposition of Patent. Under this provision any person or any third party or Government may challenge the application of grant of patent and inform to the controller of Patents for opposition, in writing against the grant of a patent after the application for a patent has been published but before the grant of a patent a patent. Pre-grant opposition acts as a defensive shield to confirm the validity of the patent applications before patents are granted to them. Furthermore pre grant opposition proceeds as a business approach, where opponents take it as a golden opportunity for opposing the unlawful protective rights.

Pre-grant opposition can be made on the grounds listed under section 25(1)(a) to (k) of the Patent Amendment Act, 2005:

- Wrongfully obtaining the invention
- anticipation by prior publication
- anticipation by prior date, Prior claiming in India
- Prior public knowledge or public use in India
- Obviousness and lack of inventive step
- non patentable subject matter
- insufficiency of description of the invention
- non-disclosure of information as per the requirement or providing materially false information by an applicant
- Patent application not filed within 12 months of filing the first application in a convention country
- nondisclosure/ wrong mention of source of biological material
- Invention anticipated with regard to traditional knowledge of any community, anywhere in the world.

Post Grant Opposition:

Post grant opposition may be filed at any time after the grant of patent but before the expiry of a period of one year from the date of publication of grant of the patent. Under this provision any person interested may give notice of opposition to the Controller in the prescribed manner on any of the grounds mentioned in section 25 of the Patent (Amendment) Act 2005. Section 2(1)(t) of Indian patent act defines "person interested" as including a person engaged in, or in promoting, research in the same filed as that to which the invention relates. In addition, interested person may also include any organization that has a manufacturing or trading/ financial interest in the goods related to the patented product.

Similar to the pre-grant opposition, a post-grant opposition may be filed on a number of grounds as specified under section 25(2) of the Act. It is notable that many of the grounds are similar to the grounds required for filing pre-grant opposition.

Majority of patent applicants will receive some type of objections based on examination report. The best thing to do is to analyse the examination report with patent professional (patent agent) and creating a response to the objections raised in the examination report.

This is a chance for an inventor to communicate his novelty over prior arts found in the examination report. The inventor and patent agent create and send a response to the examination that tries to prove to controller that his invention is indeed patentable and satisfies all patentability criteria's.

Step 9: clearing all objections

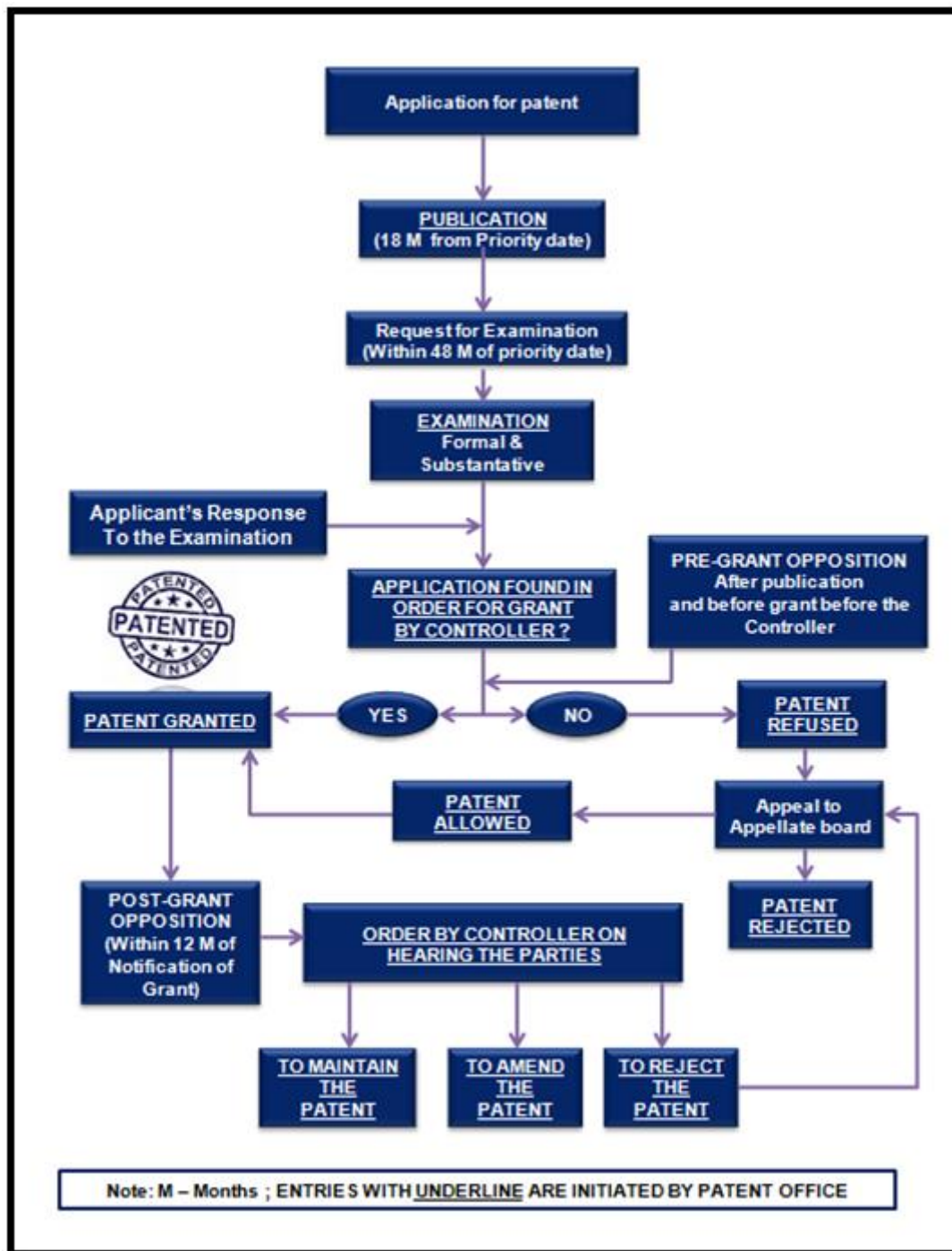
This communication between controller and patent applicant is to ensure that all objections raised in the patent application are resolved. (if not the patent will not be granted) and the inventor has his fair chance to prove his point and establish novelty and inventive step over existing prior arts.

Upon finding the patent application in order of grant, it is granted to the patent applicant as early as possible.

Step 10: Grant of patent

The application would be placed in order for grant once it is found to be meeting all patentability requirements. The grant of patent is notified in the patent journal which is published time to time.





Q.3 What are the International treaties and conventions on Patent ?

TRIPS:

The TRIPS Agreement, which came into effect on 1 January 1995, is to date the most comprehensive multilateral agreement on intellectual property.

The areas of intellectual property that it covers are: copyright and related rights (i.e. the rights of performers, producers of sound recordings and broadcasting organizations); trademarks including service marks; geographical indications including appellations of origin; industrial designs; patents including the protection of new varieties of plants; the layout-designs of integrated circuits; and undisclosed information including trade secrets and test data.

The three main features of the Agreement are:

Standards.: In respect of each of the main areas of intellectual property covered by the TRIPS Agreement, the Agreement sets out the minimum standards of protection to be provided by each Member. Each of the main elements of protection is defined, namely the subject-matter to be protected, the rights to be conferred and permissible exceptions to those rights, and the minimum duration of protection. The Agreement sets these standards by requiring, first, that the substantive obligations of the main conventions of the WIPO, the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property (Paris Convention) and the Berne Convention for the Protection of Literary and Artistic Works (Berne Convention) in their most recent versions, must be complied with. With the exception of the provisions of the Berne Convention on moral rights, all the main substantive provisions of these conventions are incorporated by reference and thus become obligations under the TRIPS Agreement between TRIPS Member countries. The relevant provisions are to be found in Articles 2.1 and 9.1 of the TRIPS Agreement, which relate, respectively, to the Paris Convention and to the Berne Convention. Secondly, the TRIPS Agreement adds a substantial number of additional obligations on matters where the pre-existing conventions are silent or were seen as being inadequate. The TRIPS Agreement is thus sometimes referred to as a Berne and Paris-plus agreement.

Enforcement: The second main set of provisions deals with domestic procedures and remedies for the enforcement of intellectual property rights. The Agreement lays down certain general principles applicable to all IPR enforcement procedures. In addition, it contains provisions on civil and administrative procedures and remedies, provisional

measures, special requirements related to border measures and criminal procedures, which specify, in a certain amount of detail, the procedures and remedies that must be available so that right holders can effectively enforce their rights.

Dispute settlement: The Agreement makes disputes between WTO Members about the respect of the TRIPS obligations subject to the WTO's dispute settlement procedures.

Substantive provisions of TRIPS on Patents

The TRIPS Agreement requires Member countries to make patents available for any inventions, whether products or processes, in all fields of technology without discrimination, subject to the normal tests of novelty, inventiveness and industrial applicability. It is also required that patents be available and patent rights enjoyable without discrimination as to the place of invention and whether products are imported or locally produced (Article 27.1).

There are three permissible exceptions to the basic rule on patentability. One is for inventions contrary to ordre public or morality; this explicitly includes inventions dangerous to human, animal or plant life or health or seriously prejudicial to the environment. The use of this exception is subject to the condition that the commercial exploitation of the invention must also be prevented and this prevention must be necessary for the protection of ordre public or morality (Article 27.2).

The second exception is that Members may exclude from patentability diagnostic, therapeutic and surgical methods for the treatment of humans or animals (Article 27.3(a)).

The third is that Members may exclude plants and animals other than micro-organisms and essentially biological processes for the production of plants or animals other than non-biological and microbiological processes. However, any country excluding plant varieties from patent protection must provide an effective sui generis system of protection. Moreover, the whole provision is subject to review four years after entry into force of the Agreement (Article 27.3(b)).

The exclusive rights that must be conferred by a product patent are the ones of making, using, offering for sale, selling, and importing for these purposes. Process patent protection must give rights not only over use of the process but also over products obtained directly by the process. Patent owners shall also have the right to assign, or transfer by succession, the patent and to conclude licensing contracts (Article 28).

Members may provide limited exceptions to the exclusive rights conferred by a patent, provided that such exceptions do not unreasonably conflict with a normal exploitation of the patent and do not unreasonably prejudice the legitimate interests of the patent owner, taking account of the legitimate interests of third parties (Article 30).

The term of protection available shall not end before the expiration of a period of 20 years counted from the filing date (Article 33).

Members shall require that an applicant for a patent shall disclose the invention in a manner sufficiently clear and complete for the invention to be carried out by a person skilled in the art and may require the applicant to indicate the best mode for carrying out the invention known to the inventor at the filing date or, where priority is claimed, at the priority date of the application (Article 29.1).

If the subject-matter of a patent is a process for obtaining a product, the judicial authorities shall have the authority to order the defendant to prove that the process to obtain an identical product is different from the patented process, where certain conditions indicating a likelihood that the protected process was used are met (Article 34).

Compulsory licensing and government use without the authorization of the right holder are allowed, but are made subject to conditions aimed at protecting the legitimate interests of the right holder. The conditions are mainly contained in Article 31. These include the obligation, as a general rule, to grant such licences only if an unsuccessful attempt has been made to acquire a voluntary licence on reasonable terms and conditions within a reasonable period of time; the requirement to pay adequate remuneration in the circumstances of each case, taking into account the economic value of the licence; and a requirement that decisions be subject to judicial or other independent review by a distinct higher authority. Certain of these conditions are relaxed where compulsory licences are employed to remedy practices that have been established as anticompetitive by a legal process. These conditions should be read together with the related provisions of Article 27.1, which require that patent rights shall be enjoyable without discrimination as to the field of technology, and whether products are imported or locally produced

The Paris Convention applies to industrial property in the widest sense, including patents, trademarks, industrial designs, utility models (a kind of "small-scale patent" provided for by

the laws of some countries), service marks, trade names (designations under which an industrial or commercial activity is carried out), geographical indications (indications of source and appellations of origin) and the repression of unfair competition.

The substantive provisions of the Convention fall into three main categories: national treatment, right of priority, common rules.

(1) Under the provisions on **national treatment**, the Convention provides that, as regards the protection of industrial property, each Contracting State must grant the **same** protection to nationals of other Contracting States that it grants to its own nationals. Nationals of non-Contracting States are also entitled to national treatment under the Convention if they are domiciled or have a real and effective industrial or commercial establishment in a Contracting State.

(2) The Convention provides for the **right of priority** in the case of patents (and utility models where they exist), marks and industrial designs. This right means that, on the basis of a regular first application filed **in one** of the Contracting States, the applicant may, within a certain period of time (12 months for patents and utility models; 6 months for industrial designs and marks), apply for protection **in any of the other** Contracting States. These subsequent applications will be regarded as if they had been filed on the same day as the first application. In other words, they will have priority (hence the expression "right of priority") over applications filed by others during the said period of time for the same invention, utility model, mark or industrial design. Moreover, these subsequent applications, being based on the first application, will not be affected by any event that takes place in the interval, such as the publication of an invention or the sale of articles bearing a mark or incorporating an industrial design. One of the great practical advantages of this provision is that applicants seeking protection in several countries are not required to present all of their applications at the same time but have 6 or 12 months to decide in which countries they wish to seek protection, and to organize with due care the steps necessary for securing protection.

(3) The Convention lays down a few **common rules for patents** that all Contracting States must follow. The most important are:

(a) **Patents.** Patents granted in different Contracting States for the same invention are **independent of each other**: the granting of a patent in one Contracting State does not oblige other Contracting States to grant a patent; a patent cannot be refused, annulled or

terminated in any Contracting State on the ground that it has been refused or annulled or has terminated in any other Contracting State.

The inventor has **the right to be named** as such in the patent.

The grant of a patent may not be refused, and a patent may not be invalidated, on the ground that the sale of the patented product, or of a product obtained by means of the patented process, is subject to restrictions or limitations resulting from the domestic law.

Each Contracting State that takes legislative measures providing for the grant of compulsory licenses to prevent the abuses which might result from the exclusive rights conferred by a patent may do so only under **certain conditions**. A compulsory license (a license not granted by the owner of the patent but by a public authority of the State concerned), based on failure to work or insufficient working of the patented invention, may only be granted pursuant to a request filed after three years from the grant of the patent or four years from the filing date of the patent application, and it must be refused if the patentee gives legitimate reasons to justify this inaction. Furthermore, forfeiture of a patent may not be provided for, except in cases where the grant of a compulsory license would not have been sufficient to prevent the abuse. In the latter case, proceedings for forfeiture of a patent may be instituted, but only after the expiration of two years from the grant of the first compulsory licence.

Patent Law Treaty (PLT)

The Patent Law Treaty (PLT) was adopted in 2000 with the aim of harmonizing and streamlining formal procedures with respect to national and regional patent applications and patents and making such procedures more user friendly. With the significant exception of filing date requirements, the PLT provides the maximum sets of requirements the office of a Contracting Party may apply.

Budapest treaty:

Adopted in 1977, the Budapest Treaty concerns a specific topic in the international patent process: microorganisms.

All states party to the Treaty are obliged to recognize microorganisms deposited as a part of the patent procedure, irrespective of where the depository authority is located.

In practice this means that the requirement to submit microorganisms to each and every national authority in which patent protection is sought no longer exists.

Patent Cooperation Treaty:(PCT)

The **Patent Cooperation Treaty (PCT)** is an international patent law treaty, concluded in 1970. It provides a unified procedure for filing patent applications to protect inventions in each of its contracting states. A patent application filed under the PCT is called an **international application**, or **PCT application**.

It makes possible to seek patent protection for an invention simultaneously in a large number of countries for filing a single **international patent application** instead of filing several separate national or regional patent applications. The granting of patents remains under the control of the national or regional patent offices in what is called the ‘national phase’.

A single filing of a PCT application is made with a Receiving Office (International Bureau of WIPO) in one language. It then results in a search performed by an International Searching Authority (ISA), accompanied by a written opinion regarding the patentability of the invention, which is the subject of the application. It is optionally followed by a **preliminary examination**, performed by an International Preliminary Examining Authority (IPEA). Finally, the relevant national or regional authorities administer matters related to the examination of application (if provided by national law) and issuance of patent.

A PCT application does not itself result in the grant of a patent, since there is no such thing as an "international patent", and the grant of patent is a prerogative of each national or regional authority. In other words, a PCT application, which establishes a filing date in all contracting states, must be followed up with the step of entering into national or regional phases to proceed towards grant of one or more patents. The PCT procedure essentially leads to a standard national or regional patent application, which may be granted or rejected according to applicable law, in each jurisdiction in which a patent is desired.

Q.4 What is compulsory licence? Discuss the cases in which compulsory licences may be granted.?

What are ‘compulsory licenses’ under the Patents Act?

In simple terms, compulsory licenses are authorizations given to a third-party by the Government to make, use or sell a particular product or use a particular process which has been patented, without the need of the permission of the patent



owner.

The provisions regarding compulsory licenses are given in the Indian Patents Act, 1970 and in the TRIPS (Trade-Related Aspects of Intellectual Property Rights) Agreement at the International level. Although this works against the patent holder, generally compulsory licenses are only considered in certain cases of national emergency, and health crisis. There are certain pre-requisite conditions which need to be fulfilled if the Government wants to grant a compulsory license in favor of someone.

Under Indian Patents Act, 1970 the provisions of ‘compulsory license’ are specifically given under Chapter XVI, and the conditions which need to be fulfilled are given in Sections 84-92 of the said Act.

Section 84

At any time after the expiration of three years from the date of the grant of a patent, any person interested may make an application to the Controller for grant of compulsory license on patent on any of the following grounds, namely:—

(a) That the reasonable requirements of the public with respect to the patented invention have not been satisfied, or

(b) that the patented invention is not available to the public at a reasonably affordable price, or

(c) that the patented invention is not worked in the territory of India.

As per Section 84, any person who is interested or already the holder of the license under the Patent can make a request to the Controller for grant of compulsory license on expiry of the three years, when the above conditions are fulfilled.

Procedure for processing compulsory licence application

On filing the application for grant of a compulsory licence along with the relevant facts and evidence, the controller will analyse the *prima facie* case made by the applicant against the patentee. After considering such factors as the nature of the invention, the applicant's ability to work the invention and whether the applicant has made efforts to obtain a licence from the patentee on reasonable terms and, if such efforts have not been successful within a reasonable period (ie, six months from the date of application), the controller will decide whether to grant or reject the compulsory licence.

In case the controller is not satisfied with the applicant's request, a notice will be issued to the applicant regarding rejection of the grant of a compulsory licence. In this scenario, the applicant may request a hearing with the controller, within one month from the date of such notice of rejection. The controller will thereafter decide the fate of the application based on the hearing discussion held with the applicant.

Opposition to the grant of a compulsory licence

When the controller is satisfied, on consideration of an application under Section 84, that a *prima facie* case has been made out for the making of an order, the applicant will be directed to serve copies of the application to the patentee and any other person appearing from the register (eg, a licensee mentioned in the register). The application made by the applicant is thereafter published in the *Official Journal*.

The patentee or any other person desiring to oppose the application for the grant of a compulsory licence may, within the prescribed time (two months from the date of publishing the application in the *Official Journal*), file a notice of opposition via Form 14, along with the prescribed fee. The opposition statement should contain statements pertaining to the grounds on which the grant of the compulsory licence is opposed. When such a notice is served, the controller will notify the applicant and give both the applicant and opponent an opportunity to be heard before deciding the case.

Termination of compulsory licence

On an application (via Form 21) along with evidence, made by the patentee or any other person deriving title or interest in the patent, the compulsory licence granted under Section 84 may be terminated by the controller when the circumstances considered for grant of the compulsory licence cease to exist. The applicant is thereafter required to serve a copy of the application and evidence to the holder of the compulsory licence and to inform the controller of the date on which the service was made effective.

The holder of the compulsory licence may file his or her objection along with evidence to the application for termination, within one month from the date of the controller's receipt of the application (and evidence). A copy of the objection and evidence is also required to be served to the applicant by the licence holder.

Thereafter, the controller will appoint a hearing for analysing the facts and issuing a verdict. If the controller decides to terminate the compulsory licence, an order setting out terms and conditions (if any) of such termination will be served to both the parties.

India's first case of granting compulsory license— India's first case of granting compulsory license was granted by the Patent office in 2012 to an Indian Company called Natco Pharma for the generic production of Bayer Corporation's Nexavar. All the 3 conditions of Sec 84 was fulfilled that the reasonable requirements of the public were not fulfilled, and that it was

not available at an affordable price and that the patented invention was not worked around in



India.

This medicine is used for treating Liver and Kidney Cancer, and one month's worth of dosage costs around Rs 2.8 Lakh. Natco Pharma offered to sell it around for Rd 9000 making this potentially lifesaving drug easily accessible to all parts of the society and not just the rich people. The Government took this decision for the general public benefit. However, it was heavily criticized by the Pharmaceutical Companies as they felt the license should not have been given.

However, Natco Pharma is paying the royalties to Bayer at a rate of 6% of all sales on a quarterly basis in accordance with the guidelines set by the United Nations Development Programme (UNDP)

In January 2013, the Health Ministry of India recommended three anti-cancer drugs trastuzumab, ixabepilone, and dasatinib for compulsory licenses. This will allow the Government to sell these drugs at a significantly lower price and will also allow the people who cannot afford the drugs originally, access to these drugs.

BDR Pharmaceuticals International Pvt Ltd v Bristol-Myers Squibb Co

In *BDR Pharmaceuticals* the controller rejected BDR's application for a compulsory licence (4 March 2013) for the Bristol-Myers Squibb cancer drug SPRYCEL. The controller rejected the compulsory licence application made by BDR by stating that BDR had failed to make a *prima facie* case for the grant of the compulsory licence. The controller observed that BDR had made no credible attempt to procure a licence from the patent holder and the applicant had also not acquired the ability to work the invention to public advantage. Thus, the request for grant of the compulsory licence was refused.

Lee Pharma v AstraZeneca AB

In the most recent case of compulsory licensing in India, Lee Pharma, a Hyderabad-based Indian pharma company, filed an application for a compulsory licence (29 June 2015) for the patent covering AstraZeneca's diabetes management drug Saxagliptin. In order to make a *prima facie* case, Lee Pharma declared that request for a licence with the patent owner was not responded to within a reasonable period. The grounds alleged by Lee Pharma were that:

- the patentee failed to meet the reasonable requirements of the public;
- the patented invention is unavailable to the public at a reasonably affordable price; and
- the patented invention is not used in India.

However, all three grounds as well as the compulsory application were rejected. The application was rejected on the basis that Lee Pharma failed to demonstrate the reasonable requirement of the public and further failed to demonstrate the comparative requirement of Saxagliptin in relation to other drugs in the market. Further, the controller held that all the related drugs available in the market were in the same price range and the allegation that Saxagliptin alone was being sold at an unaffordable price was not justified. The controller also stated that Lee Pharma failed to demonstrate the exact number of patients that were unable to obtain the drug due to its non-availability

However compulsory licenses may also be granted, when –

1. Section 92 A- For exports, under exceptional circumstances.
2. Section 92A- In case of national emergency, extreme urgency of public non-commercial use by notification of the Central Government
3. Section 92 A (1) – To a country which has insufficient or no manufacturing power in the pharmaceutical sector to address public health.

Global Perspective on Compulsory Licensing- This phenomenon of compulsory licensing is a hugely debated issue. Many developing countries are giving importance to the compulsory licensing because of the unavailability and unaffordability of the medicines, and they are continuously granting more and more compulsory licenses. The developed countries of Europe, USA are opposing this view as it would make innovation difficult for the pharmaceutical companies

Q.5 What do you mean by infringement of Patent? Which acts do not constitute infringement? Discuss various reliefs available against it.?

Rights of Patentee

A Patent confers the exclusive right on the Patentee to make, distribute or sell the invention in India. This exclusive right is for 20 years. After 20 years, that invention becomes a public Domain. An infringement would be when any of three rights is violated. A Patentee may assign/ license all or some of these rights. The exercise of the rights so transferred in favors of the assignee or the licensee by the assignor or the licensor would not amount to infringement of the Patents.

In the case of product Patents, rights of the Patentees are infringed by any one who makes or supplies that substance commercially. In the case of a process Patent, the use of such a method or process in India by anyone other than the Patentee amounts to infringement. Whether the act of a person other than the Patentee amounts to infringement or not would depend upon.

- i) The extent of the monopoly right conferred by the Patent which is interpreted from the specification and claims contained in the application of the claims would not amount to infringement.
- ii) Whether he is infringing any of the monopoly rights in the patentee to make, or sell the invention.

Infringement of Patents

Patent infringement means the violation of the exclusive rights of the patent holder. As discussed earlier, patent rights are the exclusive rights granted by the Government to an inventor over his invention for a limited period of time. In other words, if any person exercises the exclusive rights of the patent holder without the patent owner's authorization then that person is liable for patent infringement. Sections 104-114 of the Patents Act, 1970 provide guidelines relating to patent infringement.

Unlike the Design law, the Patents law does not specify as to what would constitute infringement of a patented product or process. However, the following acts when committed without the consent of the patentee shall amount to infringement:

- (i) making, using, offering for sale, selling, importing the patented product;
- (ii) using the patented process, or using, offering for sale, selling or importing the product directly obtained by that process

Types of Infringement

There are two kinds of infringement :

- **Direct Infringement**

Direct patent infringement is the most obvious and the most common form of patent infringement. Basically, direct patent infringement occurs when a product that is substantially close to a patented product or invention is marketed, sold, or used commercially without permission from the owner of the patented product or invention.

- **Indirect Infringement**

Indirect patent infringement suggests that there was some amount of deceit or accidental patent infringement in the incident. For instance, A holds a patent for a device and B manufactures a device which is substantially similar to the A's device. B is supplied with a product from another person C to facilitate manufacturing of the B's device. If the device so manufactured by B infringes upon A's patent, then the person C indirectly infringes A's patent. Further, if such a product is knowingly sold or supplied, it may lead to "contributory infringement". In the above example, if the person C knowingly supplies the product to B then the infringement is construed as contributory infringement

Doctrine of Equivalents And Doctrine of Colourable Variation

Patent infringement generally falls into two categories: literal infringement and infringement under the doctrine of equivalents. The term "literal infringement" means that each and every

element recited in a claim has identical correspondence in the allegedly infringing device or process.

However, even if there is no literal infringement, a claim may be infringed under the doctrine of equivalents if some other element of the accused device or process performs substantially the same function, insubstantially the same way, to achieve substantially the same result. The doctrine of equivalents is a legal rule in most of the world's patent systems that allows a Court to hold a party liable for patent infringement even though the infringing device or process does not fall within the literal scope of a patent claim, but nevertheless is equivalent to the claimed invention.

This "expansion" of claim coverage permitted by the doctrine of equivalents, however, is not unbounded. Instead, the scope of coverage which is afforded the patent owner is limited by (i) the doctrine of "prosecution history estoppel" and (ii) the prior art.

An infringement analysis determines whether a claim in a patent literally "reads on" an accused infringer's device or process, or covers the allegedly infringing device under the doctrine of equivalents.

Burden of Proof

The traditional rule of burden of proof is adhered to with respect to patented product and accordingly in case of alleged infringement of a patented product the 'onus of proof' rests on the plaintiff. However, TRIPS-prompted amendment inserted by way of Section 104 (A) has 'reversed burden of proof' in case of infringement of patented process. Under the current law, the court can at its discretion shift the burden of proof on the defendant, in respect of process patent if either of the following two conditions is met:

- (a) the subject matter of the patent is a process for obtaining a new product; or
- (b) there is substantial likelihood that an identical product is made by the process and plaintiff has made reasonable efforts to determine the process actually used but has failed. [Section 104 (A)]

While considering whether a party has discharged the burden imposed upon him under Section 104(A), the court shall not require him to disclose any manufacturing or commercial secrets, if it appears to the court that it would be

What can amount to Infringement?

- i) The colorable imitation of an invention.
- ii) Immaterial variation in the invention.
- iii) Mechanical equivalents.
- iv) Taking essential features of the Invention.

All the above acts often overlap each other when an infringement of a Patent or process occurs.

Infringement by mechanical equivalents would occur when he uses mere substitutes for those features so as to get the same result for the same purpose as obtained by the Patentee.

Where a suit is to be instituted?[Sec. 104]

A suit for infringement shall not be instituted in any court inferior to a District court having jurisdiction to try the suit. In appropriate cases where the High Court has original jurisdiction to try the suit shall be instituted in the High Court. When an action for infringement has been instituted in a District court and the defendants make a counter claim for revocation of the Patents the suit is transferred to the High Court for decision because High Court has the jurisdiction to try cases of revocation. The procedure followed in conducting a suit for infringement is governed by the provisions of code of civil procedure.

When a Suit can be instituted:

A suit for infringement can be instituted only after the patent has been sealed when a specification has been accepted and published i.e. during the period when opposition has been called and is being decided, the applicants cannot institute a suit for infringement, but damages sustained due to the infringement committed during the period, i.e. between the date

of publication of acceptance of complete specification and the date of damages but not suit for infringement.

When the term of the Patent has expired and infringement occurred during the term of the Patent, a suit can be instituted during the term or even after the expiry of the term. In the case of patent had lapsed and was subsequently restored, committed between the date on which Patent ceased to have effect and the date of publication of application for restoration.

When a patent was obtained wrongfully by a person and later granted to the true and first inventor, no suit for infringement can be instituted for any infringement occurring before the period of such grant to the true and first inventor. The person who institutes a suit, s not obliged to give a notice to the infringer before instituting a suit, court will issue a notice.

Who is entitled to Sue:

Only a person who has a right in the Patent can institute a suit for infringement. The following persons are entitled to sue: –

- i) Patentee
- ii) The exclusive licensee, if license is registered.
- iii) A compulsory licensee, when
- iv) Assignee.

Remedies/Reliefs provided:

1. Administrative remedy: The patent owner can reach the collector of customs and prohibit the entry of these goods into the Indian market. The patent owner must provide the name of the exporter, consignee, port of entry, name of the ship etc. details.

2. Civil remedies:

3. Injunctions: When there is a *prima facie* case and/or balance of convenience is in the favor of the plaintiff; Interim injunction is granted. Whereas after the complete trial permanent injunctions are granted.

4. Damages or accounts of profits is granted if it is established that on the date of the infringement; the defendant was aware of the prior existence of the patent.

The court may also order **delivery up** of the infringing goods. This is mentioned in order XXXIX rule 7 of the Civil Procedure Code. As per the provisions mentioned under this relief, a commissioner appointed by the court visits the defendant's premises and take the inventory of the infringing articles that are present in the defendant's premises. These orders are usually passed without sending notice to the infringer.

Groundless threats for Infringement proceedings:

There may be a certain situation where a person is aggrieved by baseless threats of patent infringement. Such a person may seek for the following reliefs:

- 1) Injunction against such threats;
- 2) Ask for damages if any sustained;
- 3) A declaration to the effect that the threats are unjustified.

In India as the awareness regarding IP protection is increasing, people are becoming more and more conscious about the ways to secure their patents. A concerned and well-informed strategy towards securing ones Intellectual property is always the best approach.

Criminal Remedies:

Indian Patent Act, 1970 also considers falsification of entries in register, claiming patent rights in an unauthorized way etc. to be punishable criminal offences. Such penalties are mentioned under Chapter XX of the Indian Patents Act, 1970.

Exceptions and Limitation of Patent Rights

Exhaustion of Patent Rights and Parallel Importation[Sec. 107 A(b)]

Compulsory License[Sec. 84 to 92]

Experimental or Research Use[Sec.47]

Use of Inventions for purposes of Government and Acquisition of Inventions by Central Government[Sec. 100]

Acts for Obtaining Regulatory Approval from Authorities[Sec. 107 A(a)]

Use of Patented Invention on Foreign Vessels [Sec. 49]

UNIT 4: DESIGNS

Q.1 What is the significance of a design? What are its essential features as per Designs Act, 2000?

JUSTIFICATION FOR PROTECTING DESIGNS

Industrial designs are a unique combination of invention, creativity and design. It is the blending of these elements that makes an industrial design exciting and new. Argument in favour of Industrial design protection is being advanced is that a strong design protection will lead to increased innovation and creativity by providing designers with an economic incentive to develop better or higher quality products.

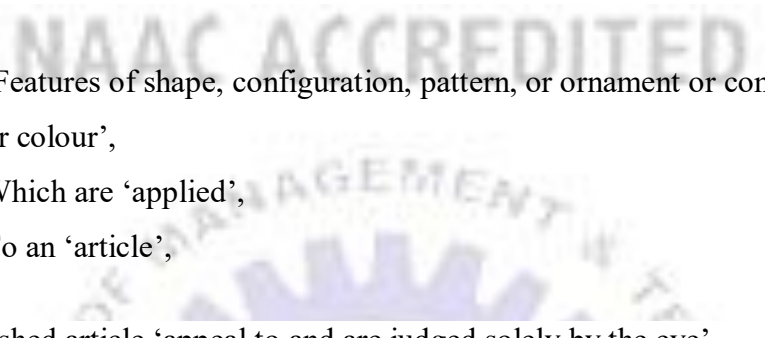
ESSENTIAL FEATURES

Section 2(d) in the Designs Act, 2000

“design” means only the features of shape, configuration, pattern, ornament or composition of lines or colours applied to any article whether in two dimensional or three dimensional or in both forms, by any industrial process or means, whether manual, mechanical or chemical, separate or combined, which in the finished article appeal to and are judged solely by the eye; but does not include any mode or principle of construction or anything which is in substance a mere mechanical device, and does not include any trade mark as defined in clause (v) of sub-section (1) of section 2 of the Trade and Merchandise Marks Act, 1958 (43 of 1958) or property mark as defined in section 479 of the Indian Penal Code (45 of 1860) or any artistic work as defined in clause (c) of section 2 of the Copyright Act, 1957 (14 of 1957);

The Act also provides that a ‘design’ may be registered in respect of an article. An ‘article’ means any article of manufacture and includes any part of an article if that part is made and sold separately.

Thus in order to be registrable under the Act, the following criteria has to be satisfied. They are:

- 
- (1) ‘Features of shape, configuration, pattern, or ornament or composition of lines or colour’,
 - (2) Which are ‘applied’,
 - (3) To an ‘article’,

Which in the finished article ‘appeal to and are judged solely by the eye’,

Applied To An Article

Designs are not registered in the abstract. They are registered as features, which are applied to an article. The essence of design law is that a design consists of visual features, which are applicable to an article. To be applicable to an article means that the design must be distinct from the article to which it is applied, so that, even without the design, the article would retain its essential character.

The subject matter which is protected by the design system is the application of the design to an article. At the outset, two characteristics of the design law could be identified. The **first** is that it is concerned with the ‘visual aspects’ of the articles. This has an important impact on the types of subject matter protected as registered designs. For example, the visual dimension of designs operates to exclude function from the scope of protection. The **second** feature is that it concerns designs applied to ‘articles’ The fact that protection is given only to design which is applied to articles means that garden design, urban planning, and architectural design have been excluded from the scope of design protection. Similarly, If you make a painting of ‘Monalisa’ on a sheet then it only a pure artistic work. But if you apply ‘Monalisa’ Painting made by you on the T- shirt then it is considered as an Industrial design.

An Article

“Article” means any article of manufacture and any substance, artificial, or partly artificial and partly natural and includes any part of an article capable of being made and sold separately.

Features of Shape, Configuration, Pattern, or Ornament or Composition of Lines or Colour

It is generally accepted that “shape” and “configuration” refer primarily to the three dimensional aspects of an article, such as the shape in which a chair or vase is made. “Pattern” and “ornamentation” refer primarily to two dimensional aspects, namely things that are added to or placed on the surface of an article, such as the pattern applied to wallpaper or carpet, colour and texture may also be embraced by the concept of pattern or ornamentation. A composition of lines or colours could be a design.

The word ‘shape’ indicates the external form of the article. The word ‘configuration’ refers to the arrangement by which the shape of a composite article is arrived at. It is also accepted that shape and configuration are often produced by a single process of manufacture. In contrast, pattern and ornamentation are normally applied to articles as a form of decoration after they have been manufactured, such as textile pattern or a fabric design

Made and Sold Separately

If a design is applied to part of an article, the part must be for an article which is ‘made and sold separately’

The parts such as body panels, the bonnet lid, the lid, the wind screen and door panels have no reality as articles of commerce apart from their forming part of a complete vehicle. Since these spare parts were intended to be used as replacement parts, it was held that they were not made and sold separately. As such, they were not parts in relation to which designs could be registered. On the other hand, objects such as wing mirrors, wheels, seats, and steering wheels were stated to be possible to substitute articles with different designs, and were held to be by their nature susceptible of being made and sold separately.

EXCLUDED SUBJECT- MATTER

All designs will not qualify for protection. Section 2(d) of the Designs Act, 2000 excludes from the meaning of design:

1. Method or Principle of Construction.

Section 2(d) of the Designs Act, provides that for the purposes of the Act ‘design’ does not include any “mode or principle of construction”. The exclusion ensures that protection is only granted to the appearance of articles rather than to the methods or principles of construction by which the article is manufactured..

2. Features dictated solely by function.

A particular shape is dictated solely by function if its relevant features are brought about by, or attributable only to, the function which the article in that shape is to perform, even if the same function could be performed by an article of different shape.

This exclusion also draws the line between design law which protects the appearance of objects and the patent law which is concerned with the functional aspects of objects

3. A mechanical device.

To be a design a particular form must possess some features beyond those necessary to enable the article to fulfill its particular purpose

4. A trademark, or property mark or artistic work.

Section 2(d) of the Designs Act excludes any trade mark as defined in the Trade and Merchandise Marks Act, 1958 or property mark as defined in Section 479 of the Indian Penal Code 1860 or any artistic work, as defined in the Copyright Act, 1957. (If you make a painting of ‘Monalisa’ on a sheet then it only a pure artistic work protected under Copyright Act not under designs Act. But if you apply ‘Monalisa’ Painting made by you on the T- shirt then it is considered as an Industrial design which is protected under Designs Act.)

5. Immoral designs or designs contrary to public order.

Section 5(1) of the Designs Act 2000 excludes designs, which are contrary to public order or morality

Q. 2 Discuss the mode and manner of registration of design under designs Act, 2000.?

REQUIREMENTS FOR REGISTRATION OF DESIGNS

Design Must Be Applied To Articles.

A Design is something which is applied to an article and not the article itself. A design must be incorporated in the article itself as in the case of a shape or configuration which is three-dimensional, e.g., shape of a bottle or flower vase or the case of design which is two dimensional, e.g., design on a bed sheet, wallpaper which serves the purpose of decoration. An article to which the design is to be applied must be something which is to be delivered to the purchaser as a finished article.

Appeal To The Eye.

The design must be capable of being applied to an article in such a way that the article to which it is applied will appeal to and judged solely by the eye. The particular shape, configuration, pattern or ornamentation must have a visual appeal. Feature to be registered must “appeal to the eye” and be “judged by the eye. In *Amp v. Utilux*, (1972), it was held that ,

- (a) to have eye appeal, the features must be externally visible.
- (b) The feature must appeal to the customer's eye.
- (c) The eye appeal need be neither artistic nor aesthetic, provided that some appeal is created by distinctiveness of shape, pattern, or ornamentation calculated to influence the consumer's choice.

The shape adopted in *Amp v. Utilux* found no “eye appeal”, because the part (electrical connector which was an internal component of a washing machine) although visibly distinctive was entirely functional and would not affect the consumer's choice. A different

approach was taken in the case, *Interlego v. Tyco*, (1988), where the toy brick's shape, though functional, did have a visual appeal which would affect the buyer's choice.

Novelty Or Originality.

A design can be registered only when it is new or original and not previously published in India. A design would be registrable if the pattern though already known is applied to new article. For example, the shape of an apple if applied to school bag would be registrable. It was held in *Pilot Pen Co. v. Gujarat Ind. P. Ltd.*, that registration could not be deemed to be effective unless the design, which sought to be protected, was new and original and not of a pre-existing common type. Also if it comprises or contains scandalous or obscene matter, shall not be registered under the Act. In *Rotela Auto Components (P) Ltd. and Anr. v. Jaspal Singh*, it was held that, the test for novelty and originality is dependent on determining the type of mental activity involved in conceiving the design in question. If the design is a mere trade variation of a previous design then the designer could be said to have kept an existing design in view and made some changes. There should be some original mental application involved when conceiving a new design. The novelty or originality of a particular part of the article may be sufficient to import the character of novelty and originality to the whole. A combination of previously known designs can be registered if the visual impact of the combination as a whole is new.

No Prior Publication

A design can be registered only when it is not previously published in India. In the case of *Wimco Ltd. v. Meena Match Industries*, the Court held that publication means the opposite of being kept secret. The disclosure even to one person is sufficient to constitute publication. The design cannot be registered under Design Act if it is not significantly distinguishable from known designs or combination of known designs. To constitute publication a design must be available to the public and it has been ceased to be a secret. For e.g.: - the display of a design on a saree in a fashion show is a publication of that design.

WHO CAN APPLY FOR REGISTRATION OF A DESIGN?

As per Section 5 of Design Act, 2000, any person who claims to be the proprietor of any new or original design can apply for the registration of the design. A foreigner can also apply for the registration of the design. However, the convention followed is that if a country does not offer the identical registration right to Indian citizen for their designs in their country, its

citizen would not be eligible to apply for registration of design in India. In the Vredenburgs Registered Designs case, it was held that if there are two persons each of whom has produced a similar design and communicated the fact of such authorship to the other, neither of them alone is the proprietor of a new or original design. There is joint authorship of the design.

PROCEDURE FOR REGISTRATION

The application under Section 5 shall be accompanied by four copies of representation of the design and the application shall state the class in which the design is to be registered. In India, we follow Locarno Classification for registration of design comprising 32 classes, numbered 1 to 31 and an additional Class 99 to include articles not falling under the aforesaid 31 classes. Briefly the procedure is as follows:

Submission of application

The proprietor of the design shall submit the application for registration in the patent office. The application shall be in the prescribed form and shall be accompanied by the prescribed fees. According to section 5(1), the controller may on application made by any person claiming to be the proprietor of any new or original design not previously published in any country and which is not contrary to public order and morality, register the design under the Act. The application is to be accompanied by the prescribed fee and in prescribed Form and in prescribed manner. The application shall state the class in which the design is to be registered.

Acceptance /Refusal

Before registration the Controller shall refer the application to an examiner appointed under this Act, to determine whether the design is capable of registration under this Act. The Controller shall consider the report of the examiner and if satisfied that the design complies with all requirements for registration under this Act shall register it. The Controller may if he thinks fit refuse to register the design. The aggrieved by such refusal may appeal to the High Court. The Controller may refuse to register a design, the use of which would be contrary to public order or morality.

Objection/Removal of Objection/Appeal to Central Government

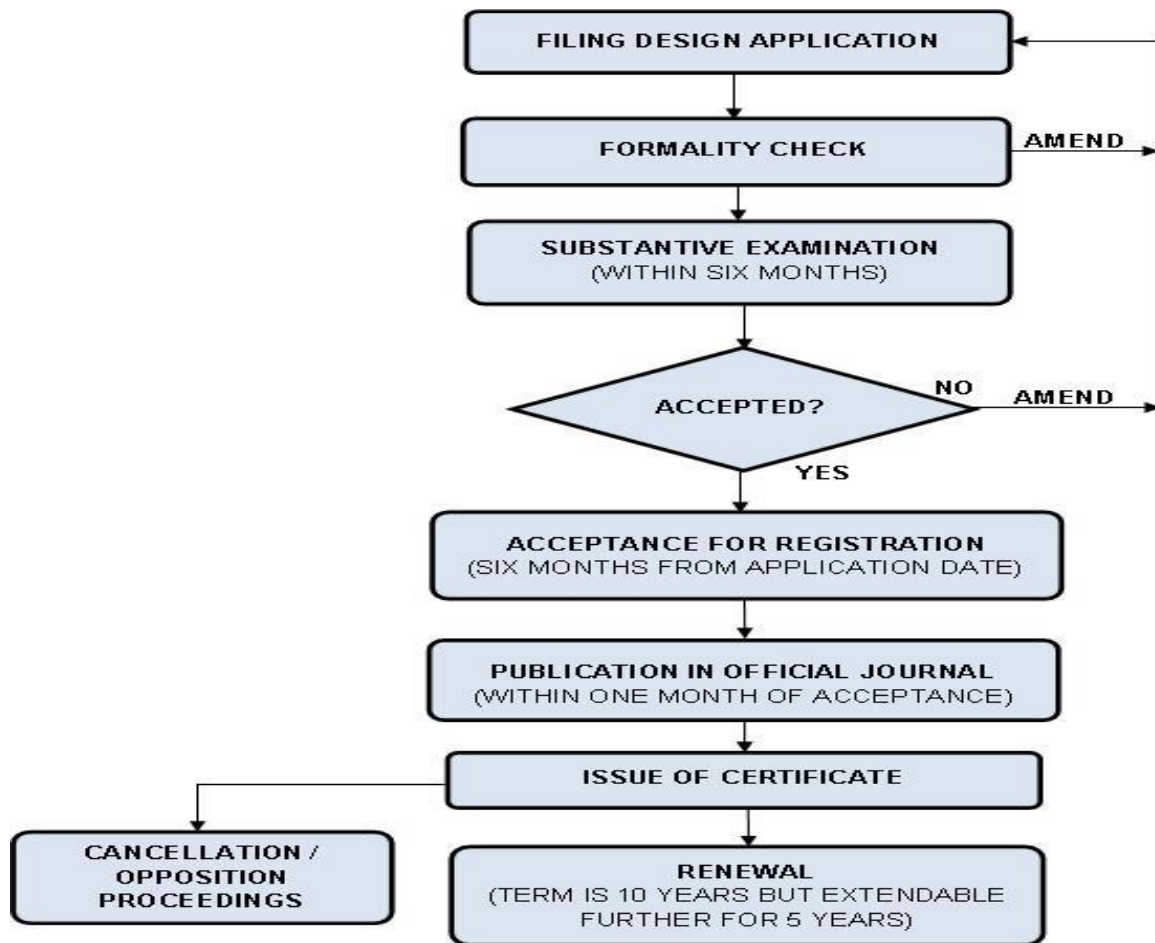
If on consideration of the application any objections appear to the Controller, a statement of these objections shall be sent to the applicant or his agent. The applicant has to remove the objection within one month of communication of the objections to him failing which the application shall be deemed to have been withdrawn. He may also apply to the Controller for being heard on the matter. When the Controller refuses the application after the submission, he may directly appeal to the Central Government whose decision is final.

Decision of Central Government: The decision of the Central Government on the registrability of the design is final.

Registration of the design

As soon as the design is registered the Controller shall direct the publication of the particulars of the design and thereafter it becomes open to public inspection. As per section 10, a book called Register of designs shall be kept in the patent office. The register shall contain particulars such as the names and addresses of the proprietors of registered designs, notifications of assignments and other prescribed particulars. On the completion of the above procedure, the Controller shall grant a certificate of registration to the proprietor of the design.

तेजस्वि नावधीतमस्तु
ISO 9001:2015 & 14001:2015



Section 19: Cancellation of a registered Design

If a registered design is :

- Previously registered in India
- Published in India or other Countries prior to the date of registration.
- Not a new or original Design
- Not a registerable design under this Act.
- Not a Design under Section 2(d) of this act.

Q.3 What are Various the International Conventions and Treaties on Designs?

TRIPS:

The TRIPS Agreement, which came into effect on 1 January 1995, is to date the most comprehensive multilateral agreement on intellectual property.

The areas of intellectual property that it covers are: copyright and related rights (i.e. the rights of performers, producers of sound recordings and broadcasting organizations); trademarks including service marks; geographical indications including appellations of origin; industrial designs; patents including the protection of new varieties of plants; the layout-designs of integrated circuits; and undisclosed information including trade secrets and test data.

The three main features of the Agreement are:

Standards.: In respect of each of the main areas of intellectual property covered by the TRIPS Agreement, the Agreement sets out the minimum standards of protection to be provided by each Member. Each of the main elements of protection is defined, namely the subject-matter to be protected, the rights to be conferred and permissible exceptions to those rights, and the minimum duration of protection. The Agreement sets these standards by requiring, first, that the substantive obligations of the main conventions of the WIPO, the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property (Paris Convention) and the Berne Convention for the Protection of Literary and Artistic Works (Berne Convention) in their most recent versions, must be complied with. With the exception of the provisions of the Berne Convention on moral rights, all the main substantive provisions of these conventions are incorporated by reference and thus become obligations under the TRIPS Agreement between TRIPS Member countries. The relevant provisions are to be found in Articles 2.1 and 9.1 of the TRIPS Agreement, which relate, respectively, to the Paris Convention and to the Berne Convention. Secondly, the TRIPS Agreement adds a substantial number of additional obligations on matters where the pre-existing conventions are silent or were seen as being inadequate. The TRIPS Agreement is thus sometimes referred to as a Berne and Paris-plus agreement.

Enforcement: The second main set of provisions deals with domestic procedures and remedies for the enforcement of intellectual property rights. The Agreement lays down certain general principles applicable to all IPR enforcement procedures. In addition, it contains provisions on civil and administrative procedures and remedies, provisional

measures, special requirements related to border measures and criminal procedures, which specify, in a certain amount of detail, the procedures and remedies that must be available so that right holders can effectively enforce their rights.

Dispute settlement: The Agreement makes disputes between WTO Members about the respect of the TRIPS obligations subject to the WTO's dispute settlement procedures

Substantive Provisions of TRIPS on Industrial designs:

Article 25.1 of the TRIPS Agreement obliges Members to provide for the protection of independently created industrial designs that are new or original. Members may provide that designs are not new or original if they do not significantly differ from known designs or combinations of known design features. Members may provide that such protection shall not extend to designs dictated essentially by technical or functional considerations.

Article 25.2 contains a special provision aimed at taking into account the short life cycle and sheer number of new designs in the textile sector: requirements for securing protection of such designs, in particular in regard to any cost, examination or publication, must not unreasonably impair the opportunity to seek and obtain such protection. Members are free to meet this obligation through industrial design law or through copyright law.

Article 26.1 requires Members to grant the owner of a protected industrial design the right to prevent third parties not having the owner's consent from making, selling or importing articles bearing or embodying a design which is a copy, or substantially a copy, of the protected design, when such acts are undertaken for commercial purposes.

Article 26.2 allows Members to provide limited exceptions to the protection of industrial designs, provided that such exceptions do not unreasonably conflict with the normal exploitation of protected industrial designs and do not unreasonably prejudice the legitimate interests of the owner of the protected design, taking account of the legitimate interests of third parties.

The duration of protection available shall amount to at least 10 years (Article 26.3). The wording “amount to” allows the term to be divided into, for example, two periods of five years.

Hague Agreement

The Hague Agreement allows applicants to register an industrial design by filing a single application with the International Bureau of WIPO, enabling design owners to protect their designs with minimum formalities in multiple countries or regions. The Hague Agreement also simplifies the management of an industrial design registration, since it is possible to record subsequent changes and to renew the international registration through a single procedural step.

An international application may be governed by the 1999 Act, the 1960 Act or both, depending on the Contracting Party with which the applicant has the connection described above (hereafter referred to as "Contracting Party of origin").

International design applications may be filed with the International Bureau of WIPO, either directly or through the industrial property office of the Contracting Party of origin if the law of that Contracting Party so permits or requires. In practice, however, virtually all international applications are filed directly with the International Bureau, and the majority are filed using the electronic filing interface on WIPO's website.

International applications may include up to 100 designs, provided they all belong to the same class of the International Classification for Industrial Designs (Locarno Classification). Applicants may choose to file an application in English, French or Spanish. International applications must contain one or several reproductions of the industrial design(s) and must designate at least one Contracting Party.

International registrations are published in the ***International Designs Bulletin***, issued weekly online. Depending on the Contracting Parties designated, applicants may request that the publication be deferred by a period not exceeding 30 months from the date of the international registration or, if priority is claimed, from the priority date.

Each Contracting Party designated by the applicant may refuse protection within 6 months, or possibly 12 months under the 1999 Act, from the date of publication of the international registration. Refusal of protection can only be based on requirements of the domestic law other than the formalities and administrative acts to be accomplished under the domestic law by the office of the Contracting Party that refuses protection.

If no refusal is notified by a given designated Contracting Party within the prescribed time limit (or if such refusal has subsequently been withdrawn), the international registration has

effect as a grant of protection in that Contracting Party, under the law of that Contracting Party.

The term of protection is five years, renewable for at least one five-year period under the 1960 Act, or two such periods under the 1999 Act. If the legislation of a Contracting Party provides for a longer term of protection, protection of the same duration shall, on the basis of the international registration and its renewals, be granted in that Contracting Party to designs that have been the subject of an international registration. To facilitate access to the Hague system for design creators from least developed countries (LDCs), the fees for an international application are, in their case, reduced to 10 per cent of the prescribed amounts.

Paris Convention:

The Paris Convention applies to industrial property in the widest sense, including patents, trademarks, industrial designs, utility models (a kind of "small-scale patent" provided for by the laws of some countries), service marks, trade names (designations under which an industrial or commercial activity is carried out), geographical indications (indications of source and appellations of origin) and the repression of unfair competition.

The substantive provisions of the Convention fall into three main categories: national treatment, right of priority, common rules.

(1) Under the provisions on **national treatment**, the Convention provides that, as regards the protection of industrial property, each Contracting State must grant the **same** protection to nationals of other Contracting States that it grants to its own nationals. Nationals of non-Contracting States are also entitled to national treatment under the Convention if they are domiciled or have a real and effective industrial or commercial establishment in a Contracting State.

(2) The Convention provides for the **right of priority** in the case of patents (and utility models where they exist), marks and industrial designs. This right means that, on the basis of a regular first application filed **in one** of the Contracting States, the applicant may, within a certain period of time (12 months for patents and utility models; 6 months for industrial designs and marks), apply for protection **in any of the other** Contracting States. These subsequent applications will be regarded as if they had been filed on the same day as the first application. In other words, they will have priority (hence the expression "right of priority")

over applications filed by others during the said period of time for the same invention, utility model, mark or industrial design. Moreover, these subsequent applications, being based on the first application, will not be affected by any event that takes place in the interval, such as the publication of an invention or the sale of articles bearing a mark or incorporating an industrial design. One of the great practical advantages of this provision is that applicants seeking protection in several countries are not required to present all of their applications at the same time but have 6 or 12 months to decide in which countries they wish to seek protection, and to organize with due care the steps necessary for securing protection.

Locarno Agreement:

The Locarno Agreement, concluded at Locarno in 1968 and amended in 1979, establishes a classification for industrial designs (the Locarno Classification).

The competent offices of the Contracting States must indicate in official documents and in any publication they issue in respect of the deposit or registration of industrial designs the numbers of the classes and subclasses of the Classification to which the goods incorporating the designs belong.

The Locarno Agreement created a Union, which has an Assembly. Every State that is a member of the Union is a member of the Assembly. Among the most important tasks of the Assembly is the adoption of the biennial program and budget of the Union.

The Agreement also set up a Committee of Experts in which all members of the Union are represented. The main task of the Committee is the periodical revision of the Classification.

The Agreement is open to States party to the Paris Convention for the Protection of Industrial Property (1883). Instruments of ratification or accession must be deposited with the Director General of WIPO.

Q.4 Explain the Overlapping of Design and Copyright ?

One of most controversial provisions of the Copyright Act, 1957, states that copyright in any design that could be registered under the Designs Act, 2000, but has not been so registered will cease when any article to which the design has been applied has been reproduced more than 50 times by an industrial process.

The judgment of a division bench of Delhi High Court in *Microfibres Inc v Girdhar & Co & Anr* (2009) provided much needed clarity with respect to the conflict between original artistic work as defined under the Copyright Act and design as defined in the Designs Act. It was held that copyright would exist in the original work of art and the author or copyright holder would continue enjoying the longer protection granted under the Copyright Act in respect of the original artistic work.

For example, a famous painting will continue to enjoy the protection available to an artistic work under the Copyright Act. A design created from such a painting for the purpose of industrial application on an article may also be entitled design protection in terms of the provisions of the Designs Act. If the design is registered under the Designs Act, the design would lose its copyright protection under the Copyright Act but the original painting would retain this protection. If the design is registrable under the Designs Act but has not been registered, the design would continue to enjoy copyright protection until the threshold limit of its application on an article by an industrial process 50 times is reached. Once that limit is crossed, it would lose its copyright protection under the Copyright Act.

It was further held that the original artistic work on which the industrially produced designed article is based would continue to fall within the meaning of artistic work as defined under section 2(c) of the Copyright Act and would be entitled to the full period of copyright protection as evident from the definition of “design” under section 2(d) of the Designs Act. The court held that the legislative intent was to grant greater protection to original, purely artistic works such as paintings, sculptures, etc., and lesser protection to design activity which is commercial in nature. The protection accorded to a work which is commercial in nature is lesser than and not to be equated with the protection granted to a work of pure art. Thus, the creator or copyright holder would continue enjoying the longer protection granted under the Copyright Act in respect of the original artistic work.

Using this rationale, Delhi High Court in *Ritika Private Limited v Biba Apparels Private Limited* (2016) held that because of the language of section 15(2) of the Copyright Act, no copyright can subsist in a drawing, sketch or design used for the creation of dresses, once more than 50 dresses have been produced. The court considered the observation in the *Microfibres* case that the legislature intended to give a lesser period of copyright protection

when a design is created which is applied for commercial purposes. The court observed that an interpretation to give protection under the Copyright Act although the drawing, sketch or design is to be registered under the Designs Act would result in the Designs Act being redundant, and that every design originates with an intermediate product such as engraving, mould or diagram, based on the artistic work.

In the case of *Holland Company LP and Ors v SP Industries* (2017), Delhi High Court interpreted the relevant sections of the Designs Act and the Copyright Act and held that where a design of an article is prepared for industrial production of an article, it is a design and registrable under the Designs Act, and under section 14(c) of the Copyright Act, the author of such a design can claim copyright. Since such a design is registrable under Designs Act, if the design has been used for production of articles by an industrial process more than 50 times by the copyright owner or by any other person with the owner's permission, the copyright in the design ceases.

Considering the above judgments, it has become settled that if original drawings made solely for the industrial production of an article meet the criteria of a design, they can be protected by registration under the Designs Act, but even if such registration is not sought, the author continues to enjoy rights over the drawings if the article made from such drawings is produced by an industrial process no more than 50 times.

Q.5 What do you mean by piracy of copyright in design? What rights are available to the proprietor of design?

Piracy Of A Registered Design[Sec. 22(1)]

Infringement of a copyright in design is termed as "Piracy of a registered Design". It is not lawful for any person during the existence of copyright to do the following acts without the consent or license of the registered proprietor of the design. Section 22 of the Designs Act, 2000, lays down that the following acts amount to piracy:

(1) To publish or to have it published or expose for sale any article of the class in question on which either the design or any fraudulent or obvious imitation has been applied.

(2) To either apply or cause to apply the design that is registered to any class of goods covered by the registration, the design or any imitation of it.

(3) To import for the purpose of sale any article belonging to the class in which the design has been registered and to which the design or a fraudulent or obvious imitation thereof has been applied.

In fact any unauthorized application of the registered design or a fraudulent or obvious imitation thereof to any article covered by the registration for trade purpose or the import of such articles for sale is a piracy or infringement of the copyright in the design.

Meaning Of Fraudulent Or Obvious Imitation

A distinction is made between fraudulent and obvious imitation. The crux of both is that there is imitation. Thus even in the case of fraudulent imitation the design applied must be an imitation of the registered design. In a fraud the imitation has been made with the intention to deceive another person with the knowledge that what is being done is a violation of the other person's right. There must be an exact imitation of the registered design. In *Western Engineering Company v. Paul Engineering Co*, it was held that features of shape, configuration, pattern etc, of the two designs must be same for determining whether there was infringement or not. The sameness in feature shall be determined by the eye. The design need not be identical on all points and differ on no points.

To have a basic understanding about the piracy of a design, it is better to have a conjoined reading of Sections 22 and 11 of the Designs Act. While Section 11 authorizes a registered proprietor to have copyright in the design, Section 22 safeguards such right of the proprietor.

The piracy of a design may happen only as per the following circumstances:

1) It is committed during the existence of copyright in any design.

2) The design is applied or imitated without the consent of the registered proprietor.

3) It is for the purpose of sale, and not for private or personal use.

4) The articles must be in the same class in which the design is registered

Remedies against Infringement of designs[Sec. 22(2)]

The design statute in India though does not carry any separate provision on criminal remedies, provides criminal actions for the infringement of designs. The civil and criminal remedies are clubbed together in the case of designs.

According to the Designs Act, 2000 it shall not be lawful for any person for the purpose of sale to apply or cause to be applied to any article in any class of articles in which the design is registered the design or any fraudulent or obvious imitation except with the licence or written consent of the registered proprietor or to do anything with a view to enable the design to be so applied, or to import for the purposes of sale without the consent of the registered proprietor any article belonging to the class in which the design has been registered and having applied to it the design or any fraudulent or obvious imitation, or knowing that the design or any fraudulent or obvious imitation has been applied to any article in any class of articles in which the design is registered without the consent of the registered proprietor to publish or expose or cause to be published or exposed for sale that article.

Any person contravening the above provisions shall be liable to pay to the registered proprietor of the design a sum not exceeding twenty-five thousand rupees recoverable as a contract debt. The total sum recoverable in respect of any one design shall not exceed fifty thousand rupees. Any proceeding for relief under this provision shall be instituted in any court below the court of District Judge.

The designs provisions in India thus, does not contain an exhaustive detail of the criminal remedies as is provided under the other aspects of intellectual property rights like patents, copyrights and trademarks.

SUBJECT – LABOUR LAW II
SUBJECT CODE – 404

Q.1 Explain the constitutional validity of the minimum wages Act, 1948?

A.1 India introduced the minimum wages Act in 1948, giving both the central and state government jurisdiction in fixing wages. The Act is legally not-binding but statutory.

Payment of wages below the minimum wage rate amounts to forced labour. Wage boards are set up to review the industry's capacity to pay and fix minimum wages such that they at least cover a family of four's requirements of calories, shelter, clothing, education, medical assistance, and entertainment. Under the law, wage rates in scheduled employments differ across states, sectors, skills, regions, and occupations owing to the difference in costs of living, regional industries capacity to pay, consumption patterns etc. Hence, there is no single uniform minimum wage rate across the country and the structure has become overly complex.

THE ACT IS NOT UNREASONABLE: It can scarcely be disputed that securing of living wages to labourers which ensure not only bare physical subsistence but also the maintenance of health and decency is conducive to the general interest of the public. This is one of the directive principles of the state policy embodied in Article 43 of the constitution. Individual employers might find it difficult to carry on the business on the basis of minimum wages fixed under the Act but this must not be the entire premise and reason to strike down the law itself as unreasonable.

CASES: 1) SHAMRAO V/S STATE OF BOMBAY.

2) V. UNICHONNOY V/S STATE OF KERALA.

THE ACT DOES NOT VIOLATE ARTICLE 14 OF THE INDIAN CONSTITUTION: "On a careful examination of the various provisions of the Act and the machinery setup by this Act, Section 3(3)(iv) neither contravene Article 19(1) of the constitution nor does it infringe the equal protection clause of the constitution. The Courts have also held that the constitution of the committees and the Advisory Board did not contravene the statutory provisions in that behalf prescribed by the legislature".

NOTIFICATION FIXING DIFFERENT RATES OF MINIMUM WAGES FOR DIFFERENT LOCALITIES IS NOT DISCRIMINATORY: Where the fixation of rates of wages and their revision were manifestly preceded by a detailed survey and enquiry and the rates were brought into force after a full consideration of the representations which were made by a section of the employers concerned, it would be difficult in the circumstances to hold that notification which fixed different rates of minimum wages for different localities was not based on intelligent differentia having a rational nexus with the object of the Act, and thereby violated article 14. When the Government issued notification improving upon the existing minimum wages as revised minimum wages disregarding the contrary report of the committee appointed under Section 5-1(a); such notification was bad under the law and was to be made inoperative.

SANCTITY OF THE MINIMUM WAGE ACT: Supreme Court in three separate rulings, has held that non-payment of minimum wages is tantamount to ‘forced labour’ prohibited under Article 23 of the Constitution. The Supreme Court holds that ‘forced labour’ may arise in several ways, including “compulsion arising from hunger and poverty, want and destitution”. In *Sanjit Roy Vs. State of Rajasthan* (1983), the Supreme Court held that the Exemption Act in so far as it excluded the applicability of the Minimum Wages Act 1948 to the workmen employed in famine relief work is “clearly violative” of Article 23. Thus, even public works ostensibly initiated by the government for the sole purpose of providing employment are subject to the Minimum Wage Act.

Q.2 Explain the procedure for hearing and deciding claims?

A.2 1) The appropriate government may, by notification, appoint such officers, not below the rank of a labour officer, as it thinks fit to be the authorities for the purpose of hearing and deciding-

(a) complaints with regard to the contravention of any provision of this Act.

(b) claims arising out of non-payment of wages at equal rates to men and women workers for the same work or work of a similar nature.

(c) The same or subsequent notification, define the local limits within which each such authority shall exercise its jurisdiction.

(2) Every complaint or claim referred to in sub-section (1) shall be made in such manner as may be prescribed.

(3) If any question arises as to whether two or more works are of the same nature or of a similar nature, it shall be decided by the authority appointed under sub-section (1).

(4) Where a complaint or claim is made to the authority appointed under sub-section (1) it may, after giving the applicant and the employer an opportunity of being heard, and after such inquiry as it may consider necessary, direct-

(i) in the case of a claim arising out of non-payment of wages at equal rates to men and women workers for the same work or work of a similar nature, that payment be made to the worker of the amount by which the wages payable to him exceed the amount actually paid;

(ii) in the case of complaint, that adequate steps be taken by the employer so as to ensure that there is no contravention of any provision of this Act.

(5) Every authority appointed under sub-section (1) shall have all the powers of a Civil Court under the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908 (5 of 1908), for the purpose of taking evidence and of enforcing the attendance of witnesses and compelling the production of documents, and every such authority shall be deemed to be a civil court for all the purposes of section 195 and Chapter XXVI .

(6) Any employer or worker aggrieved by any order may be an authority appointed under sub-section (1), on a complaint or claim may, within thirty days from the date of the order, prefer an appeal to such authority as the appropriate government may, by notification, specify in this behalf, and that authority may, after hearing the appeal, conform, modify or reverse the order appealed against and no further appeal shall lie against the order made by such authority.

(7) The authority referred to in sub-section (6) may, if it is satisfied that the appellant was prevented by sufficient cause from preferring the appeal within the period specified in sub-section (6), allow the appeal to be preferred within a further period of thirty days not thereafter.

(8) The provisions of sub-section (1) of section 33C of the Industrial Disputes Act, 1947 (14 of 1947), shall apply for the recovery of monies due from an employer arising out of the decision of an authority appointed under this section Code of Criminal Procedure, 1973 (2 of 1974).

Q.3 EXPLAIN THE PROCEDURE FOR FIXATION AND REVISION OF MINIMUM WAGES?

A.3 The interest of workers was kept in mind while passing the Minimum Wages Act. This legislative protection acts as a protective cushion from the exploitations of top-level officials. They often subject workers to peanut wages in exchange for hard-core labour. According to Section 3 of the Minimum wages act, it is the responsibility of the appropriate government to set a specific yardstick. Apart from fixing the minimum rate, the appropriate government shall also conduct periodic reviews within a span of five years of fixing such rates and revise the same if felt necessary. However, according to section 3(1A), the appropriate government shall not take any such initiative in regards to scheduled employment having an employee count of less than 1000.

Fixing of Minimum Rates u/s 3(2)

The appropriate government can fix –

- 1) A minimum piece rates.
- 2) Minimum time rate.
- 3) Overtime rate which is the minimum time or piece rate as a substitution of some other rate which would have been otherwise applied for overtime work performed by employees.
- 4) Guaranteed time rate which is the minimum remuneration rate applicable to employees who had been working on piece rate till now if he is again employed on time rate.

While revising or freshly fixing the wage rate under the Minimum wages act, Varying rates of minimum wage shall be fixed for:

- 1) Varying classes of work under the same scheduled employment.
- 2) Different scheduled employment.
- 3) Various localities.
- 4) Apprentices, children, adolescents, and adults.

Minimum wage rate can either be fixed by one or more of these wage periods:

- 1) Month.
- 2) Day.
- 3) Hour.
- 4) Any other larger wage-period which is deemed appropriate.

Section 4 of the Minimum wages act states that the appropriate government can either fix or revise the wage rate of scheduled employments. However, the following parts shall come under the purview of the appropriate government in such a case:

- 1) Basic wage rate and special allowance which should be in harmony with the cost of living index of its workers.
- 2) Basic wage rate either along with or without the cost of living allowance as well as the authorized cash value of concessions pertaining to the supply of essential commodities at subsidized rates.
- 3) A comprehensive wage rate comprising of the cash value of the concessions, cost of living allowance and the basic rate.

Alternatively, a competent authority can calculate the cash value of concessions and cost of living allowance. This has to be done after appropriate intervals and according to the directions laid down by the appropriate government.

Section 5 of Minimum Wages Act – Procedure to Fix or Revise Minimum Wages. When the minimum wage rate of scheduled employment is fixed, or revised for the very first time under this act,

- A) As many committees and sub-committees can be appointed as necessary.
- B) A notification containing the relevant proposals can be published in the official gazette containing information related to people who might be affected by the same. A date also needs to be specified within a span of two months from the date of notification within which the proposals should be considered.
- C) The appropriate government can issue a notification in the Official Gazette after considering the advice of the committee to fix or revise the minimum wage rate.

Q.4 DISCUSS IN DETAIL THE PROCEDURE FOR FIXATION OF MINIMUM RATES OF WAGE BY TIME RATE OR BY PIECE RATE?

A.4 The government under the minimum wages act, 1948 has made it mandatory to provide the workers working in a factory with minimum wages. Therefore, the section 3 of this act states the Fixation of Minimum Rates of Wages [Section 3(1) (A)]. This will help the employees to get their hard-work paid appropriately.

Fixing the minimum rates of wages:

- 1) For the time work, a minimum rate of wages will be given i.e. “a minimum time rate.”
- 2) For the piece of work, a minimum rate of wages will be given i.e. “a minimum piece rate.”
- 3) Employees employed for a piece of work are given a minimum rate of remuneration, for securing their minimum rate of wages on time work basis.
- 4) A substitute of minimum rate is given to the employees whether a piece or the time rate, which would be otherwise given as the overtime done by the workers.

Also, a minimum rate of wages may be fixed for one or more of the following periods of wages:

- 1) The Hour.

2)The Day.

3)The Month.

4)The other large wage period as may be suggested.

Therefore, the wages may be provided by calculating the number of hours the worker spent in a factory. It can also be calculated by the number of days, months or the other suggested wage period. Thus, the minimum wage fixation shall be done, for all the workers working in a factory depending on the nature of calculation as per the number of hours, day, month, etc.

THE APPROPRIATE GOVERNMENT MAY FIX:

(a) a minimum rate of wages for time work (hereinafter referred to as "a minimum time rate").

(b) a minimum rates of wages for piece work (hereinafter referred to as "a minimum piece rate").

(c) a minimum rate of remuneration to apply in the case of employees employed on piece work for the purpose of securing to such employees a minimum rate of wages on a time work basis (hereinafter referred to as "a guaranteed time rate").

(d) a minimum rate (whether a time rate or a piece rate) to apply in substitution for the minimum rate which would otherwise be applicable in respect of overtime work done by employees (hereinafter referred to as "overtime rate").

(2A) Where in respect of an industrial dispute relating to the rates of wages payable to any of the employees employed in a scheduled employment any proceeding is pending before a Tribunal or National Tribunal under the Industrial Disputes Act 1947 (14 of 1947) or before any like authority under any other law for the time being in force or an award made by any Tribunal National Tribunal or such authority is in operation and a notification fixing or revising the minimum rates of wages in respect of the scheduled employment is issued during the pendency of such proceeding or the operation of the award then notwithstanding anything contained in this Act the minimum rates of wages so fixed or so revised shall not apply to those employees during the period in which the proceeding is pending and the award made therein is in operation or as the case may be where the notification is issued during the period of operation of an award during that period; and where such proceeding or award relates to the rates of wages payable to all the employees in the scheduled employment no minimum rates of wages shall be fixed or revised in respect of that employment during the said period.

FIXING OF MINIMUM RATES OF WAGES:

(1) The appropriate government shall in the manner hereinafter provided –

(a) fix the minimum rates of wages payable to employees employed in an employment specified in Part I or Part II of the Schedule and in an employment added to either Party by notification under section 27 : Provided that the appropriate government may in respect of employees employed in an employment specified in Part II of the Schedule instead of fixing minimum rates of wages under this clause for the whole State fix such rates for a part of the State or for any specified class or classes of such employment in the whole State or part thereof;

(b) review at such intervals as it may think fit such intervals not exceeding five years the minimum rates of wages so fixed and revise the minimum rates if necessary : Provided that where for any

reason the appropriate government has not reviewed the minimum rates of wages fixed by it in respect of any scheduled employment within any interval of five years nothing contained in this clause shall be deemed to prevent it from reviewing the minimum rates after the expiry of the said period of five years and revising them if necessary and until they are so revised the minimum rates in force immediately before the expiry of the said period of five years shall continue in force.

(1A) Notwithstanding anything contained in sub-section (1) the appropriate government may refrain from fixing minimum rates of wages in respect of any scheduled employment in which there are in the whole State less than one thousand employees engaged in such employment but if at any time the appropriate government comes to a finding after such inquiry as it may make or cause to be made in this behalf that the number of employees in any scheduled employment in respect of which it has refrained from fixing minimum rates of wages has risen to one thousand or more it shall fix minimum rates of wages payable to employees in such employment as soon as may be after such finding.

Q.5 WRITE A PARAGRAPH ON: A) CONCEPT OF MINIMUM WAGE.

B) FAIR WAGE.

C) LIVING WAGE.

D) NEED BASED MINIMUM WAGE.

A) CONCEPT OF MINIMUM WAGE:

Minimum wages have been defined as “the minimum amount of remuneration that an employer is required to pay wage earners for the work performed during a given period, which cannot be reduced by collective agreement or an individual contract”.

This definition refers to the binding nature of minimum wages, regardless of the method of fixing them. Minimum wages can be set by statute, decision of a competent authority, a wage board, a wage council, or by industrial or labour courts or tribunals. Minimum wages can also be set by giving the force of law to provisions of collective agreements.

The purpose of minimum wages is to protect workers against unduly low pay. They help ensure a just and equitable share of the fruits of progress to all, and a minimum living wage to all who are employed and in need of such protection. Minimum wages can also be one element of a policy to overcome poverty and reduce inequality, including those between men and women, by promoting the right to equal remuneration for work of equal value.

Minimum wage systems should not be seen or used in isolation, but should be designed in a way to supplement and reinforce other social and employment policies. Several types of measures can be used to tackle income and labour market inequality, including pro-employment policies, social transfers, and creating an enabling environment for sustainable enterprises.

The purpose of a minimum wage, which sets a floor, should also be distinguished from collective bargaining, which can be used to set wages above an existing floor. Figure 1 shows a hypothetical wage distribution with a "minimum wage zone" and a "collective bargaining zone" which can be used to establish minimum standards and to set wages above an existing floor.

Figure 2 illustrates that the effectiveness of minimum wages depends on many factors, including the extent to which they afford protection to all workers in an employment relationship, including

women, and youth and migrant workers, regardless of their contractual arrangements, as well as all industries and occupations in the economy (coverage); whether they are set and adjusted at an adequate level that covers the needs of workers and their families, while taking into account economic factors (level); and whether employers comply with minimum wage regulations (compliance).

B) FAIR WAGE:

Fair Wages are minimum wage rates for specific occupations. They must be paid by contractors doing work for governments with fair wage policies. These policies generally apply to construction, trades and sometimes cleaning and security workers, and are often tied to union wage rates. They're intended to ensure contractors pay decent wages on government contracts instead of slashing wages and benefits. The City of Toronto introduced the first fair wage policy in 1893, before minimum wages existed. Since then the federal government, British Columbia, Saskatchewan, Manitoba, Ontario, New Brunswick, the Yukon and a number of municipalities have adopted (and sometimes subsequently repealed) fair wage policies. Fair" in this context means wages must be comparable to what other companies in the same field pay, as well as what you are paying employees within your company doing the same job. Salaries must also correspond to the employee's sense of his worth, based on his efforts, education and experience. Some jobs in certain areas pay more. When there are fewer workers available, employers offer a higher wage to entice motivated workers to join their company. Wages are lower when there is an abundance of qualified workers available. Jobs that require more skills and talents offer a higher wage. With that said, a fair wage should adequately match the job being performed. However, something considered fair in one job may not be in another.

C) LIVING WAGE:

Living wage is defined as the minimum income necessary for a worker to meet their basic needs. This is not the same as a subsistence wage, which refers to a biological minimum. Needs are defined to include food, housing, and other essential needs such as clothing. The goal of a living wage is to allow a worker to afford a basic but decent standard of living through employment without government subsidies. Due to the flexible nature of the term "needs", there is not one universally accepted measure of what a living wage is and as such it varies by location and household type. A related concept is that of a family wage – one sufficient to not only support oneself, but also to raise a family. The living wage differs from the minimum wage in that the latter can fail to meet the requirements for a basic quality of life which leaves the worker to rely on government programs for additional income. Living wages have typically only been adopted in municipalities. In economic terms, the living wage is similar to the minimum wage as it is a price floor for labour. It thus differs from the national minimum wage in that it is not set according to a legal threshold. In the United Kingdom and New Zealand, advocates define a living wage to mean that a person working 40 hours a week, with no additional income, should be able to afford the basics for a modest but decent life, such as, food, shelter, utilities, transport, health care, and child care. Living wage advocates have further defined a living wage as the wage equivalent to the poverty line for a family of four. The income would have to allow the family to 'secure food, shelter, clothing, health care, transportation and other necessities of living in modern society'. A definition of a living wage used by the Greater London Authority (GLA) is the threshold wage, calculated as an income of 60% of the median, and an additional 15% to allow for unforeseen events.

D) NEED BASED MINIMUM WAGE:

The concept of the Need-Based Minimum Wage has evolved in India after Independence and owes its origin to the Directive Principles of the Indian Constitution and the welfare policy of the Government. Its acceptance in principle connotes a public effort at an institutional determination of wage rates particularly in the industrial sector of the economy. Unfortunately, the computation of the need based minimum wage has become a controversial subject in the country. While the concept of what the need based minimum wage should cover is fairly clear and generally accepted by both the employer and employee, its actual assessment into monetary terms has raised endless disputes not alone by the employer.

NEED-BASED MINIMUM WAGE FORMULA: Minimum wages for the average family will have to be based on requirements of food, clothing, housing and so on. Additional components of expenditure to cover for children's education, medical treatment, recreation, festivals and ceremonies. In a vast country such as ours, there are bound to be regional variations in these requirements owing to climatic conditions, food habits, etc. At the same time in order to ensure a degree of uniformity the Conference have adopted a certain norm. The food component carries the largest- proportion of the total cost of living in a working-class family. The component's significance is not only economic but human also. On food depends the health and efficiency of the worker, which is vital to the industrial production. After a protracted discussion the Conference adopted Dr. Aykroyd's second dietary prescription of the adequate diet level, the other one being the optimum diet level. An optimum diet according to him, is one which ensures the functioning of the various life processes at their very best; whereas an adequate diet maintains these processes but not at their peak levels. The optimum diet would include more of vitamins and less of proteins in its caloric content, while the adequate diet would include more of proteins and less of vitamins.

Q.6 WRITE A NOTE ON DEDUCTIONS WHICH CAN BE MADE ON WAGES?

A.6 Section 7 of the Payment of Wages Act, 1936, outlines the deductions from wages permitted under the Act. An employer cannot make deductions of any kind except those specified under the Act. In this article, we will take a look at these rules pertaining to deductions from wages.

Section 7 – Deductions from Wages:

Notwithstanding the provisions of the Railways Act, 1989 (24 of 1989), an employer must pay the wages of an employed person without deductions of any kind except those specified under the Payment of Wages Act, 1936. A deduction can be made only in the following manner.

1. Fines (explained in Section 8)
2. Absence from duty (explained in Section 9)
3. Damage to or loss of goods expressly entrusted in the employed person (explained in Section 10)
4. House-accommodation or other amenities or services that the employer provides (explained in Section 11).

It is important to note that the term 'services' does not imply the supply of tools and also the raw materials required for fulfilling the job.

5. Recovery of Advances (explained in Section 12)

a) The recovery of loans made from any fund constituted for labour welfare.

b) Also, the recovery of loans granted for house-building or other purposes.

Section 7 of the Payment of Wages Act, 1936, outlines the deductions from wages permitted under the Act. An employer cannot make deductions of any kind except those specified under the Act. In this article, we will take a look at these rules pertaining to deductions from wages.

Section 7 – Deductions from Wages:

Notwithstanding the provisions of the Railways Act, 1989 (24 of 1989), an employer must pay the wages of an employed person without deductions of any kind except those specified under the Payment of Wages Act, 1936. A deduction can be made only in the following manner.

1. Fines (explained in Section 8)
2. Absence from duty (explained in Section 9)
3. Damage to or loss of goods expressly entrusted in the employed person (explained in Section 10)
4. House-accommodation or other amenities or services that the employer provides (explained in Section 11).

It is important to note that the term ‘services’ does not imply the supply of tools and also the raw materials required for fulfilling the job.

5. Recovery of Advances (explained in Section 12)

a) The recovery of loans made from any fund constituted for labour welfare.

b) Also, the recovery of loans granted for house-building or other purposes.

6. The income tax that the employed person is liable to pay. Any deduction under the order of the court or any other competent authority. Provident fund – subscription and also the repayment of advances. Payments that the employee makes to cooperative societies. Payment of premium of the life insurance policy to the Life Insurance Corporation of India, of the employed person. Further, this requires written authorization from the person employed. Payment of the contribution of the employed person towards any fund that the employer or the trade union constitutes. This also requires written authorization from the person employed. Payment of the fees for the membership of any trade union registered under the Trade Union Act, 1926. Also, this requires written authorization from the person employed as well. The payment of insurance premium on Fidelity Guarantee Bonds. Recovery of losses which the railway administration sustains on account of the employed person accepting counterfeit coins or mutilated or forged currency notes. If the railway administration sustains losses due to the employed person failing to invoice or bill or collect or account for the appropriate charges, then the losses are recovered as deductions. Recovery of losses which the railway administration sustains on account of the employed person incorrectly granting any rebates or refunds. A contribution that the employed person makes to the Prime Minister’s National Relief Fund or any similar Fund which is notified in the Official Gazette. Further, this needs written authorization from the person employed. A contribution to an insurance scheme that the central government may make for its employees.

Limit on Deductions:

As per Section 7(3) of the Payment of Wages Act, 1936, the total amount of deductions cannot exceed:

- A) 75 percent of the wages when the deductions are wholly or partly for payments to cooperative societies.
- B) 50 percent of the wages in every other case.

Q.7 WRITE A DETAILED NOTE ON WAGES?

A.7 A wage is monetary compensation (or remuneration, personnel expenses, labour) paid by an employer to an employee in exchange for work done. Payment may be calculated as a fixed amount for each task completed (a task wage or piece rate), or at an hourly or daily rate (wage labour), or based on an easily measured quantity of work done. Wages are part of the expenses that are involved in running a business. Payment by wage contrasts with salaried work, in which the employer pays an arranged amount at steady intervals (such as a week or month) regardless of hours worked, with commission which conditions pay on individual performance, and with compensation based on the performance of the company as a whole. Waged employees may also receive tips or gratuity paid directly by clients and employee benefits which are non-monetary forms of compensation. Since wage labour is the predominant form of work, the term "wage" sometimes refers to all forms (or all monetary forms) of employee compensation. Wage labour involves the exchange of money for time spent at work (the latter quantity is termed labour power by Marx and subsequent economists). As Moses I. Finley lays out the issue in *The Ancient Economy*: The very idea of wage-labour requires two difficult conceptual steps. First it requires the abstraction of a man's labour from both his person and the product of his work. When one purchases an object from an independent craftsman ... one has not bought his labour but the object, which he had produced in his own time and under his own conditions of work. But when one hires labour, one purchases an abstraction, labour-power, which the purchaser then uses at a time and under conditions which he, the purchaser, not the "owner" of the labour-power, determines (and for which he normally pays after he has consumed it). Second, the wage labour system requires the establishment of a method of measuring the labour one has purchased, for purposes of payment, commonly by introducing a second abstraction, namely labour-time. The wage is the monetary measure corresponding to the standard units of working time (or to a standard amount of accomplished work, defined as a piece rate). The earliest such unit of time, still frequently used, is the day of work. The invention of clocks coincided with the elaborating of subdivisions of time for work, of which the hour became the most common, underlying the concept of an hourly Wage.

Definitions:

“A wage may be defined as the sum of money paid under contract by an employer to worker for services rendered.” -Benham

“Wages is the payment to labour for its assistance to production.” -A.H. Hansen

‘Wage rate is the price paid for the use of labour.’ -Mc Connell

“A wage is price; it is the price paid by the employer to the worker on account of labour performed.” - J.R. Turner:

TYPES OF WAGES:

In real practice, wages are of many types as follows:

1. Piece Wages:

Piece wages are the wages paid according to the work done by the worker. To calculate the piece wages, the number of units produced by the worker are taken into consideration.

2. Time Wages:

If the labourer is paid for his services according to time, it is called as time wages. For example, if the labour is paid Rs. 35 per day, it will be termed as time wage.

3. Cash Wages:

Cash wages refer to the wages paid to the labour in terms of money. The salary paid to a worker is an instance of cash wages.

4. Wages in Kind:

When the labourer is paid in terms of goods rather than cash, is called the wage in kind. These types of wages are popular in rural areas.

5. Contract Wages:

Under this type, the wages are fixed in the beginning for complete work. For instance, if a contractor is told that he will be paid Rs. 25,000 for the construction of building, it will be termed as contract wages.

Concepts of Wages:

The following are the two main concepts of wages:

A. Nominal Wage:

B. Real Wage:

A. Money Wages or Nominal Wages:

The total amount of money received by the labourer in the process of production is called the money wages or nominal wages.

B. Real Wages:

Real wages mean translation of money wages into real terms or in terms of commodities and services that money can buy. They refer to the advantages of worker's occupation, i.e. the amount of the necessities, comforts and luxuries of life which the worker can command in return for his services. An example will make the things clear. Suppose 'A' receives Rs. 500 p.m. as money wages during the year. Suppose also that midway through the year the prices of commodities and services, that the worker buys, go up, on the average, by 50%. It means that though the money wages remain the same, the real wages (consumption basket in terms of commodities and services) are reduced by 50%. Real wages also include extra supplementary benefits along with the money wages.

Q.8 WRITE A NOTE ON PAYMENT OF WAGES ACT, 1936?

A.8 In this Act unless there is anything repugnant in the subject or context -

(i) "employed person" includes the legal representative of a deceased employed person.

(ia) "employer" includes the legal representative of a deceased employer.

(ib) "factory" means a factory as defined in clause (m) of section 2 of the Factories Act 1948 (63 of 1948) and includes any place to which the provisions of that Act have been applied under sub-section (1) of section 85 thereof;

(ii) "industrial or other establishment" means any -

(a) tramway service or motor transport service engaged in carrying passengers or goods or both by road for hire or reward.

(aa) air transport service other than such service belonging to or exclusively employed in the military naval or air forces of the Union or the Civil Aviation Department of the Government of India.

(b) dock wharf or jetty.

(c) inland vessel mechanically propelled.

(d) mine quarry or oil-field.

(e) plantation.

(f) workshop or other establishment in which articles are produced adapted or manufactured with a view to their use transport or sale.

(g) establishment in which any work relating to the construction development or maintenance of buildings roads bridges or canals or relating to operations connected with navigation irrigation or to the supply of water or relating to the generation transmission and distribution of electricity or any other form of power is being carried on.

(h) any other establishment or class of establishments which the Central Government or a State Government may have regard to the nature thereof the need for protection of persons employed therein and other relevant circumstances specify by notification in the Official Gazette.

(iia) "mine" has the meaning assigned to it in clause (j) of sub-section (1) of section 2 of the Mines Act 1952 (35 of 1952).

(iii) "plantation" has the meaning assigned to it in clause (f) of section 2 of the Plantations Labour Act 1951 (69 of 1951).

(iv) "prescribed" means prescribed by rules made under this Act.

(v) "railway administration" has the meaning assigned to it in clause (6) of section 3 of the Indian Railways Act 1890 (9 of 1890).

(vi) "wages" means all remuneration (whether by way of salary allowances or otherwise) expressed in terms of money or capable of being so expressed which would if the terms of employment express or

implied were fulfilled by payable to a person employed in respect of his employment or of work done in such employment and includes -

- (a) any remuneration payable under any award or settlement between the parties or order of a court;
- (b) any remuneration to which the person employed is entitled in respect of overtime work or holidays or any leave period;
- (c) any additional remuneration payable under the terms of employment (whether called a bonus or by any other name);
- (d) any sum which by reason of the termination of employment of the person employed is payable under any law contract or instrument which provides for the payment of such sum whether with or without deductions but does not provide for the time within which the payment is to be made.

Q.9 EXPLAIN THE CONCEPT OF MAXIMUM AMOUNT OF DEDUCTIONS?

A.9 Deductions allowed under the income tax act help you reduce your taxable income. You can avail the deductions only if you have made tax-saving investments or incurred eligible expenses. There are a number of deductions available under various sections that will bring down your taxable income. The most popular one is section 80C of Chapter VIA. Other preferred deductions under chapter VIA are 80D, 80E, 80G, 80DDB and so on. In this article, let us discuss some of the important deductions under chapter VIA that a taxpayer can claim.

1. Section 80C

Deductions on Investments: You can claim a deduction of Rs 1.5 lakh your total income under section 80C. In simple terms, you can reduce up to Rs 1,50,000 from your total taxable income, and it is available for individuals and HUFs, filing your Income Tax Return. The Income Tax Department will refund the excess money to your bank account.

2. Section 80CCC – Insurance Premium

Deduction for Premium Paid for Annuity Plan of LIC or Other Insurer: Section 80CCC provides a deduction to an individual for any amount paid or deposited in any annuity plan of LIC or any other insurer. The plan must be for receiving a pension from a fund referred to in Section 10(23AAB). Pension received from the annuity or amount received upon surrender of the annuity, including interest or bonus accrued on the annuity, is taxable in the year of receipt.

3. Section 80CCD – Pension Contribution

Deduction for Contribution to Pension Account:

a. Employee's contribution under Section 80CCD (1)

You can claim this if you deposit in your pension account. Maximum deduction you can avail is 10% of salary (in case the taxpayer is an employee) or 20% of gross total income (in case the taxpayer being self-employed) or Rs 1.5 lakh – whichever is less.

4. Section 80 TTA – Interest on Savings Account

Deduction from Gross Total Income for Interest on Savings Bank Account: If you are an individual or an HUF, you may claim a deduction of maximum Rs 10,000 against interest income from your

savings account with a bank, co-operative society, or post office. Do include the interest from savings bank account in other income.

Section 80TTA deduction is not available on interest income from fixed deposits, recurring deposits, or interest income from corporate bonds.

5. Section 80GG – House Rent Paid

Deduction for House Rent Paid Where HRA is not Received:

- a. Section 80GG deduction is available for rent paid when HRA is not received. The taxpayer, spouse or minor child should not own residential accommodation at the place of employment.
- b. The taxpayer should not have self-occupied residential property in any other place.
- c. The taxpayer must be living on rent and paying rent.
- d. The deduction is available to all individuals.

6. Section 80E – Interest on Education Loan

Deduction for Interest on Education Loan for Higher Studies:

A deduction is allowed to an individual for interest on loans taken for pursuing higher education. This loan may have been taken for the taxpayer, spouse or children or for a student for whom the taxpayer is a legal guardian. 80E deduction is available for a maximum of 8 years (beginning the year in which the interest starts getting repaid) or till the entire interest is repaid, whichever is earlier. There is no restriction on the amount that can be claimed.

7. Section 80EE – Interest on Home Loan

Deductions on Home Loan Interest for First Time Home Owners:

This deduction is available in FY 2017-18 if the loan has been taken in FY 2016-17. The deduction under section 80EE is available only to home-owners (individuals) having only one house property on the date of sanction of the loan. The value of the property must be less than Rs 50 lakh and the home loan must be less than Rs 35 lakh. The loan taken from a financial institution must have been sanctioned between 1 April 2016 and 31 March 2017. There is an additional deduction of Rs 50,000 available on your home loan interest on top of deduction of Rs 2 lakh (on interest component of home loan EMI) allowed under section 24.

8. Section 80CCG – RGESS

Rajiv Gandhi Equity Saving Scheme (RGESS):

The deduction under this section 80CCG is available to a resident individual, whose gross total income is less than Rs.12 lakh. To avail the benefits under this section the following conditions should be met:

- a. The asceses should be a new retail investor as per the requirement specified under the notified scheme.

b. The investment should be made in such listed investor as per the requirement specified under the notified scheme.

c. The minimum lock in period in respect of such investment is three years from the date of acquisition in accordance with the notified scheme.

9. Section 80D – Medical Insurance

Deduction for the premium paid for Medical Insurance:

You (as an individual or HUF) can claim a deduction of Rs.25,000 under section 80D on insurance for self, spouse and dependent children. An additional deduction for insurance of parents is available up to Rs 25,000, if they are less than 60 years of age. If the parents are aged above 60, the deduction amount is Rs 50,000, which has been increased in Budget 2018 from Rs 30,000. In case, both taxpayer and parent(s) are 60 years or above, the maximum deduction available under this section is up to Rs.1 lakh. Example: Rohan's age is 65 and his father's age is 90. In this case, the maximum deduction Rohan can claim under section 80D is Rs. 100,000. From FY 2015-16 a cumulative additional deduction of Rs. 5,000 is allowed for preventive health check.

10. Section 80DD – Disabled Dependent

Deduction for Rehabilitation of Handicapped Dependent Relative:

Section 80DD deduction is available to a resident individual or a HUF and is available on:

a. Expenditure incurred on medical treatment (including nursing), training and rehabilitation of handicapped dependent relative.

b. Payment or deposit to specified scheme for maintenance of handicapped dependent relative.

i. Where disability is 40% or more but less than 80% – fixed deduction of Rs 75,000.

ii. Where there is severe disability (disability is 80% or more) – fixed deduction of Rs 1,25,000.

Q.10 WRITE A NOTE ON TIME OF PAYMENT OF WAGE?

A.10 Time of payment of wages:

(1) The wages of every person employed upon or in -

(a) any railway factory or industrial or other establishment upon or in which less than one thousand persons are employed, shall be paid before the expiry of the seventh day.

(b) any other railway factory or industrial or other establishment shall be paid before the expiry of the tenth day, after the last day of the wage-period in respect of which the wages are payable. Provided that in the case of persons employed on a dock wharf or jetty or in a mine the balance of wages found due on completion of the final tonnage account of the ship or wagons loaded or unloaded as the case may be shall be paid before the expiry of the seventh day from the day of such completion.

(2) Where the employment of any person is terminated by or on behalf of the employer the wages earned by him shall be paid before the expiry of the second working day from the day on which his employment is terminated. Provided that where the employment of any person in an establishment is terminated due to the closure of the establishment for any reason other than a weekly or other

recognised holiday the wages earned by him shall be paid before the expiry of the second day from the day on which his employment is so terminated.

(3) The State Government may by general or special order exempt to such extent and subject to such conditions as may be specified in the order the person responsible for the payment of wages to persons employed upon any railway (otherwise than in a factory) or to persons employed as daily-rated workers in the Public Works Department of the Central Government or the State Government from the operation of this section in respect of wages of any such persons or class of persons.

(4) Save as otherwise provided in sub-section (2) all payments of wages shall be made on a working day.

Due Date for Salary Payment and Wages:

As per the provisions of the Payment of Wages Act, 1936, wages need to be paid to employees before the expiry of the 7th day of the last day of the wage period, where number of employees are less than 1000. In case the number of employees is less than 1000, wages must be paid before the expiry of the 10th day of the last day of the wage period. Further, wages must be paid only on working day and not on holiday. In case employment of any person is terminated, the wages earned by him must be paid before the expiry of the second working day from the date of termination.

Mode of Payment of Salary and Wages:

Salary and wages should be paid only in current coins or currency notes or both. The wages can also be paid by cheque or by crediting into bank account, however, in order to do so, the employer has to obtain written authorization from the employed person.

Fines; Deduction for absence from the duty; Deduction for the damage to or loss of goods of employed person; Deduction for house accommodation supplies by the employer; Deduction for the amenities and service supplied by employer; Deduction for recovery of advances and interest, and adjustment of overpayment; Deductions for recovery of loans from any fund constituted for the welfare of labour; Deduction for income tax payable by the employed person; Deduction on orders of a court or other authority; Deduction for subscription and repayment of advance from any Provident Fund; Deduction for payments to cooperative societies; Deduction of premium for LIC policy on written authorization of the employed person; or any other investment for Post Office Saving Schemes;

The total amount of deductions should not exceed 50 % of the wages of the employee in any wage period. If whole or part of the deductions is meant for the payments to co- operative societies, then the deductions cannot exceed 75%.

Q.11 EXPLAIN GENERAL DUTIES OF OCCUPIER?

A.11 General Duties of Occupier under Factories Act, 1948:

1) To ensure the health, safety and welfare of all workers while they are at work in the factory. To provide and maintain the plant and systems of work in the factory that are safe and without risk to health of the workers. To provide arrangements in the factory for ensuring safety and absence of risk to health in connection with the use, handling, storage and transport of articles and substances. To provide such information, instruction, training and supervision as are necessary to ensure the health and safety of all workers at work. To maintain all places of work in the factory in a condition that is

safe and without risks to health and to provide and maintain such means of access to, and egress from, such places as are safe and without such risks. To provide, maintain or monitor such working environment in the factory for the workers that is safe, without risk to health and adequate as regards facilities and arrangements for their welfare at work. To prepare a written statement of his general policy with respect to the health and safety of the workers at work and the organisation and arrangements in force for carrying out that policy.

2) To provide a clean, well ventilated, well illuminated healthy working environment to all workers, to provide adequate drinking water & facilities like latrines, urinals etc. To maintain and monitor health of all workers by providing them a healthy, clean, dust/chemical free working environment, by providing them suitable personal protective wears, by carrying out medical examination, by monitoring the work environment etc.

3) To provide welfare facilities like lunch rooms, canteen, crèche, washing facilities, first-aid appliances etc to all workers.

4) To provide leave with wages facility, to pay overtime wages, to observe working timing restrictions regarding all workers. Not to employ child workers in the factory.

5) To provide safe working environment to all workers by providing proper safeguards to dangerous parts of machines, by training the workers in safe operating procedures, by providing adequate information about the hazardous properties of the chemicals and process, by providing proper safety systems in the plant such as pressure / temp. Controllers, interlocks, safety valves, by providing flameproof electrical fitting in case of handling of flammable chemicals etc. To get the lifting machines, tackles and pressure plants examined by a competent person, to provide proper firefighting arrangements etc.

6) Occupier of the factory involving a hazardous process shall disclose all the information regarding dangers, including health hazards and the measures to overcome such hazards. To maintain accurate and up-to-date health record of the workers, to form a safety committee, to carry out safety studies such as safety report, safety audit, risk analysis etc., to prepare an onsite emergency control plan.

Q.12 DISCUSS IN DETAIL WORKING HOURS OF ADULTS?

A.12 The definition of an adult is someone who has completed his/her eighteen years of age. The adult workers in a factory have fixed working hours of adults under the factory act, 1948. Thus, there are certain rules and policies made for the well-being of the working employees in a factory. As per the factory act, section 51 no worker is allowed to work for more than forty-eight hours in a week.

The weekly holidays: As, per section 52 of the factory act, no worker is required to work on the very first day of the week. Except if s/he:

A) Has immediate holiday for the whole day, after the said day

B) A substitute holiday will be provided to the working employees if the factory occupier has served them a prior-notice for work on the weekly holiday

The compensatory holidays: This comes under the section 53 of the factory act. If the worker is exempted for the substitute holiday as stated under the section 52. Hence, s/he will be allowed to have compensatory holidays of equal number to the lost holidays. Although this shall be done within the two months.

The daily working hours: As per the section 51 of the factory act, no worker is required to work more than nine hours in any day in a factory.

The rest intervals: There must be fixed rest period for every working employee in a factory. In the section 55 of the factory act, no worker is required to work for more than five hours straight. There has to be a halt of at least half-an-hour for rest.

WORKING HOURS: Working Hours is nothing but the hours for which the worker or employee under a job. It can be on a daily basis, weekly basis or monthly basis. Earlier, the job description was cantered around the pay or the salary. But now since, the quality of the work is also important for the workers, the aspect of working hours plays an important role in deciding to opt for a job or not. In order to protect the workers from the exploitation of the factory owners in respect of working hours, the Factories Act, 1948 states some provisions related to it.

Section 51: Weekly Hours-This section lays down the maximum limit on working time for a worker in a factory on a weekly basis. It states that no factory would ask the workers or make them work for more than 48 hours a week.

Section 52: Weekly Holidays-This section states that no adult worker shall be required or allowed to work in a factory on the first day of the week. But this provision applies subject to certain conditions:

- (a) Firstly, he has or will have a holiday for the whole day on one of three days immediately before or after the relevant day.
- (b) Secondly, the manager of the factory has, before the said day or the substituted day under the clause.

Section 53: Compensatory Holidays- This section states that if in any case, the factory in under any provision cuts-off a holiday of the worker, then the factory is under due pressure to give the same number of holidays to the workers within the time period of two months.

Section 54: Daily Hours- This section is nothing but the extension of Section 51. Keeping in view the weekly working hours limit prescribed by Section 51, this section states the limit on a daily basis. It states that a factory should allow a worker to work for more than 9 hours per day.

Section 55: Rest Intervals- This section states that the maximum time for which a worker will work before the interval time period is 5 hours. The interval needs to be of a minimum half an hour, in certain cases, the State Government may exempt some factories from this limitation. In reality, the limitation is not removed but extended to 6 hours only.

Section 56: Spread Over- Looking at the human limitations in working, this section states that the periods of work of an adult worker in a factory including the intervals for rest should not spread over more than 10.5 hours in any day.

Section 57: Night Shifts- This section provides certain clarifications for the questions related to the night shifts. It states that if any worker works after midnight, then the provisions of holidays of Section 52 and Section 53 will be applicable for 24 hours after his shift ends. Moreover, the extra hours after midnight will form part of the previous day only.

Section 59: Overtime and Extra Wages- This section rewards those workers who are trying to work for more than the maximum time. It states that those workers who work for more than 9 hours a day or 48 hours weekly, he/she is entitled to be paid at double wage rate than the ordinary wage rate for the extra time. The 'ordinary wage rate' includes only the basic salary and the allowances. It does not include the bonus and other perks. Moreover, the factories need to maintain proper registers for the details of the extra time of the workers and the payment made to them.

Section 60: Double Employment: This section states that no worker is allowed or required to work for more than one factory in a day. In other words, if a worker is working in a factory on a day then, he cannot work for another factory on the same day.

Section 61: Notice of Periods of Work for Adults- This section states that the factory manager should paste a notice on the wall of the factory about the time period of the work for the workers. Moreover, the manager has to comply with the time limiting sections like Section 52. In case the workers don't have to work at the same time then, the manager should specify the time of their work and the timing of their work.

Section 62: Register of Workers- This section states that the manager of the factory to maintain a register about the details of the workers of the factory. It includes names of the workers, work nature, specific formal groups of the workers, etc. Moreover, no worker can work in the factory unless his/her name is given in the register.

Q.13 DISCUSS IN DETAIL ANNUAL LEAVE WITH WAGES?

A.13 ANNUAL LEAVE WITH WAGES:

(1) Every worker who has worked for a period of 240 days or more in a factory during a calendar year shall be allowed during the subsequent calendar year, leave with wages for a number of days calculated at the rate of-

(i) if an adult, one day for every twenty days of work performed by him during the previous calendar year;

(ii) if a child, one day for every fifteen days of work performed by him during the previous calendar year.

(a) any days of lay-off, by agreement or contract or as permissible under the standing orders.

(b) in the case of a female worker, maternity leave for any number of days not exceeding twelve weeks.

(c) the leave earned in the year prior to that in which the leave is enjoyed. shall be deemed to be days on which the worker has worked in a factory for the purpose of computation of the period of 240 days or more, but shall not earn leave for these days.

Explanation 2: The leave admissible under this sub-section shall be exclusive of all holidays whether occurring during or at either end of the period of leave.

(2) A worker whose service commences otherwise than on the first day of January shall be entitled to leave with wages at the rate laid down in clause (i) or, as the case may be, clause (ii) of sub-section

(1) if he has worked for two-thirds of the total number of days in the remainder of the calendar year.

90[(3) If a worker is discharged or dismissed from service or quits his employment or is

superannuated or dies while in service, during the course of the calendar year, he or his heir or nominee, as the case may be, shall be entitled to wages in lieu of the quantum of leave to which he was entitled immediately before his discharge, dismissal, quitting of employment, superannuation or death calculated at the rates specified in sub-section (1), even if he had not worked for the entire period specified in sub-section (1) or sub-section (2) making him eligible to avail of such leave, and such payment shall be made-

(i) where the worker is discharged or dismissed or quits employment, before the expiry of the second working day from the date of such discharge, dismissal, or quitting.

(ii) where the worker is superannuated or dies while in service, before the expiry of two months from the date of such superannuation or death.

(4) In calculating leave under this section, fraction of leave of half a day or more shall be treated as one full day's leave, and fraction of less than half a day shall be omitted.

(5) If a worker does not in any one calendar year take the whole of the leave allowed to him under sub-section (1) or sub-section (2), as the case may be, any leave not taken by him shall be added to the leave to be allowed to him in the succeeding calendar year. That the total number of days of leave that may be carried forward to a succeeding year shall not exceed thirty in the case of an adult or forty in the case of a child. That a worker, who has applied for leave with wages but has not been given such leave in accordance with any scheme laid down in sub-section (8) and (9) 92[or in contravention of sub-section (10)] shall be entitled to carry forward the 93[leave refused] without any limit.

(6) A worker may at any time apply in writing to the manager of a factory not less than fifteen days before the date on which he wishes his leave to begin, to take all the leave or any portion thereof allowable to him during the calendar year. That the application shall be made not less than thirty days before the date on which the worker wishes his leave to begin, if he is employed in a public utility service as defined in clause (n) of section 2 of the Industrial Disputes Act, 1947 (14 of 1947), that the number of times in which leave may be taken during any year shall not exceed three.

(7) If a worker wants to avail himself of the leave with wages due to him to cover a period of illness, he shall be granted such leave even if the application for leave is not made within the time specified in sub-section (6); and in such a case wages as admissible under section 81 shall be paid not later than fifteen days, or in the case of a public utility service not later than thirty days from the date of the application for leave.

(8) For the purpose of ensuring the continuity of work, the occupier or manager of the factory, in agreement with the Works Committee of the factory constituted under section 3 of the Industrial Disputes Act, 1947 (14 of 1947), or a similar Committee constituted under any other Act or if there is no such Works Committee or a similar Committee in the factory, in agreement with the representatives of the workers therein chosen in the prescribed manner, may lodge with the Chief Inspector a scheme in writing whereby the grant of leave allowable under this section may be regulated.

(9) A scheme lodged under sub-section (8) shall be displayed at some conspicuous and convenient places in the factory and shall be in force for a period of twelve months from the date on which it comes into force, and may thereafter be renewed with or without modifications for a further period of twelve months at a time, by the manager in agreement with the Works Committee or a similar

Committee, or as the case may be, in agreement with the representatives of the workers as specified in sub-section (8), and a notice of renewal shall be sent to the Chief Inspector before it is renewed.

(10) An application for leave which does not contravene the provisions of sub-section (6) shall not be refused, unless refusal is in accordance with the scheme for the time being in operation under sub-sections (8) and (9).

(11) If the employment of a worker who is entitled to leave under sub-section (1) or sub-section (2), as the case may be, is terminated by the occupier before he has taken the entire leave to which he is entitled, or if having applied for and having not been granted such leave, the worker quits his employment before he has taken the leave, the occupier of the factory shall pay him the amount payable under section 80 in respect of the leave not taken, and such payment shall be made, where the employment of the worker is terminated by the occupier, before the expiry of the second working day after such termination, and where a worker who quits his employment, on or before the next pay day.

(12) The unveiled leave of a worker shall not be taken into consideration in computing the period of any notice required to be given before discharge or dismissal.

Q.14 WHAT ARE THE ADDITIONAL PROVISIONS REGULATING THE EMPLOYMENT OF WOMEN IN FACTORY?

A.14 The gender equality allows women workers to work in factories with men. Considering this the central and state government has made additional provisions regulating the employment of women in a factory. Thus, the additional provisions are under different sections of factories act, 1948.

The restrictions on employment of women –

- 1) Under the section 54, no exemption shall be made on the female workers, relating to the daily working hours.
- 2) There is a strict restriction on the women workers' employment except between the hours of 6:00 am to 7:00 pm. As no women are allowed to be employed between the hours of 10:00 pm to 5:00 am.
- 3) No changes in the shifts allow the factory act, except the after the weekly holiday or any other holiday.
- 4) The section 66 doesn't allow any female worker to work during late night hours.
- 5) The mining act, 1952 prohibits the women employed in any part which is below the ground level.
- 6) The factory act also bounds the employer to provide the female workers 30 or more in number with crèches for their children, aged from 6 years to below.
- 7) There should be a fixed rest period called rest interval for the women workers.
- 8) Also, women workers shall be provided with the bathing and cleaning facilities to maintain health and hygiene at work.
- 9) There must be proper restrooms for female working staff in a factory.
- 10) It allows women too, to take off when in need and also get the fixed maternity leave along with the weekly and festival holidays.

11)The maternity leaves are made paid also other leaves are paid for women working in the factories.

Women Labour:

Women form an integral part of the Indian workforce. According to the information provided by the office of Registrar General & Census Commissioner of India, As per Census 2011, the total number of female workers in India is 149.8 million and female workers in rural and urban areas are 121.8 and 28.0 million respectively. Out of total 149.8 million female workers, 35.9 million females are working as cultivators and another 61.5 million are agricultural labourers. Of the remaining females' workers, 8.5 million are in household Industry and 43.7 million are classified as other workers. As per Census 2011, the work participation rate for women is 25.51 percent as compared to 25.63 per cent in 2001. The Work Participation Rate of Women has reduced marginally in 2011 but there is an improvement from 22.27 per cent in 1991 and 19.67 per cent in 1981. The work participation rate for women in rural areas is 30.02 per cent as compared to 15.44 per cent in the urban areas. In so far as the organised sector is concerned, in March, 2011 women workers constituted 20.5 percent of total employment in organised sector in the country which is higher by 0.1 percent as compared to the preceding year. As per the last Employment Review by Directorate General of Employment & Training (DGE&T), on 31st March, 2011, about 59.54 lakh women workers were employed in the organised sector (Public and Private Sector). Of this, nearly 32.14 lakh women were employed in community, social and personal service sector. Some of the important protective provisions for safeguarding the interests of working women are:

PROTECTIVE MEASURES FOR WOMEN EMPLOYEE:

Safety/Health Measures:

Section 22(2) of the Factories Act, 1948 provides that no woman shall be allowed to clean, lubricate or adjust any part of a prime mover or of any transmission machinery while the prime mover or transmission machinery is in motion, or to clean, lubricate or adjust any part of any machine if the cleaning, lubrication or adjustment thereof would expose the woman to risk of injury from any moving part either of that machine or of any adjacent machinery. Section 27 of the Factories Act, 1948 prohibits employment of women in any part of a factory for pressing cotton in which a cotton opener is at work.

Prohibition of Night Work:

Section 66(1)(b) of the Factories Act, 1948 states that no woman shall be required or allowed to work in any factory except between the hours of 6 a.m. and 7 p.m. Section 25 of the Beedi and Cigar Workers (Conditions of Employment) Act, 1966 stipulates that no woman shall be required or allowed to work in any industrial premise except between 6 a.m. and 7 p.m. Section 46(1)(b) of the Mines Act, 1952 prohibits employment of women in any mine above ground except between the hours of 6 a.m. and 7 p.m.

Maternity Benefit:

The Maternity Benefit Act, 1961 regulates the employment of women in certain establishments for certain periods before and after child-birth and provides maternity benefits. The Building and Other Constructions (Regulation of Employment and Conditions of Service) Act, 1996 provides for maternity benefit to female beneficiaries of the Welfare Fund.

Provisions for Separate Latrines and Urinals:

Provision for separate latrines and urinals for female workers exist under the following:

1. Rule 53 of the Contract Labour (Regulation and Abolition) Act, 1970.
2. Section 19 of the Factories Act, 1948.
3. Rule 42 of the Inter State Migrant Workmen (RECS) Central Rules, 1980.
4. Section 20 of the Mines Act, 1952.
5. Section 9 of the Plantations Labour Act, 1951.

Provisions for Separate Washing Facilities:

Provision for separate washing facilities for female workers exists under the following:

1. Section 57 of the Contract Labour (Regulation and Abolition) Act, 1970.
2. Section 42 of the Factories Act.
3. Section 43 of the Inter-State Migrant Workmen (RECS) Act, 1979.

Provision for Creches:

Provision for crèches exists under the following:

1. Section 48 of the Factories Act, 1948.
2. Section 44 of the Inter State Migrant Workmen (RECS) Act, 1979.
3. Section 12 of the Plantations Labour Act, 1951.
4. Section 14 of the Beedi and Cigar Workers (Conditions of Employment) Act, 1966.
5. Section 35 of the Building and other Constructions (Regulation of Employment and Conditions of Service) Act, 1996.

Q.15 WHAT ARE THE MEASURES TO BE TAKEN IN FACTORIES FOR HEALTH, SAFETY, AND WELFARE OF WORKERS?

A.15 Measures to be taken by factories for health, safety and welfare of workers:

Factories take several health and safety measures for the welfare of the workers. Since the implementation of the factory act, 1948 there came many changes in the rules of the factories. The government has issued strict rules to be followed by the occupier of the factories. Therefore, the higher authorities have made mandatory measures to be taken by factories for health, safety and welfare of workers.

Health:

There must be a check-on the cleanliness in the factory- the cleanliness counts from the floor to the fences of the machinery. Also, there must be proper arrangements for the disposal of dirt, dust and the garbage. Hence, the interior should be good with the proper drainage system to ensure no water clogging happens.

The temperature and ventilation- the circulation of fresh air in the work premises is a must for the maintenance of a comfortable temperature for the workers. Therefore, the walls and roofs of the factory should be of some material that doesn't exceed the temperature

The other important health factors involved- the facility of proper and clean drinking water; proper lighting; arrangements for humidification; measures to avoid the inhalation of dust and fumes; arrangements for rest-rooms for both men and women.

Safety:

The fencing of machinery- the primary factor for the safety of the workers involves the fencing of the types of machinery.

The safety measures for work on or near the machinery in motion- the operation of machinery should only be allowed to the well-trained employees. Also, women or young person shall not be given the permission to clean, adjust or lubricate any part of the machinery.

Other important safety measures involve- prohibition of women and a young person near or on the machinery; Lifting of heavy machines, ropes, pulling the excessive load should be banned; special precautions to be taken while handling the inflammable dust gas, or explosive.

Welfare of Workers:

In every factory-

(a) adequate and suitable facilities for washing shall be provided and maintained for use of the workers therein.

(b) separate and adequately screened facilities shall be provided for the use of male and female workers.

(c) such facilities shall be conveniently accessible and shall be kept clean.

The State Government may, in respect of any factory or class or description of factories or of any manufacturing process, prescribe standards of adequate and suitable facilities for washing. The State Government may, in respect of any factory or class or description of factories make rules requiring the provision therein of suitable place for keeping clothing not worn during working hours and for the drying of wet clothing.

In every factory suitable arrangement for sitting shall be provided and maintained for all workers obliged to work in a standing position, in order that they may take advantage of any opportunities for rest which may occur in the course of their work. If, in the opinion of the Chief Inspector, the workers in any factory engaged in a particular manufacturing process or working in a particular room, are able to do their work efficiently in a sitting position, he may, by order in writing, require the occupier of the factory to provide before a specified date such seating arrangements as may be practicable for all workers so engaged or working. The State Government may, by notification in the Official Gazette, declare that the provisions of sub-section (1) shall not apply to any specified factory or class or description of factories or to any specified manufacturing process.

There shall, in every factory, be provided and maintained so as to be readily accessible during all working hours first-aid boxes or cupboards equipped with the prescribed contents, and the number of such boxes or cupboards to be provided and maintained shall not be less than one for every one

hundred and fifty workers ordinarily employed at any one time in the factory. Nothing except the prescribed contents shall be kept in a first-aid box or cupboard. Each first-aid box or cupboard shall be kept in the charge of a separate responsible person, who holds a certificate in first-aid treatment recognized by the State Government and who shall always be readily available during the working hours of the factory. In every factory wherein more than five hundred workers are ordinarily employed there shall be provided and maintained an ambulance room of the prescribed size, containing the prescribed equipment and in the charge of such medical and nursing staff as may be prescribed and those facilities shall always be made readily available during the working hours of the factory.

The State Government may make rules requiring that in any specified factory wherein more than two hundred and fifty workers are ordinarily employed, a canteen or canteens shall be provided and maintained by the occupier for the use of the workers. Without prejudice in the generality of the foregoing power, such rules may provide for-

- (a) the date by which such canteen shall be provided.
- (b) the standard in respect of construction, accommodation, furniture and other equipment of the canteen.
- (c) the foodstuffs to be served therein and the charges which may be made thereof. (d) the constitution of a managing committee for the canteen and representation of the workers in the management of the canteen.
- (d) the items of expenditure in the running of the canteen which are not to be taken into account in fixing the cost of foodstuffs and which shall be borne by the employer.

In every factory wherein more than one hundred and fifty workers are ordinarily employed adequate and suitable shelters or rest-rooms and a suitable lunch-room, with provision for drinking water, where workers can eat meals brought by them, shall be provided and maintained for the use of the workers:

Provided that any canteen maintained in accordance with the provisions of section 46 shall be regarded as part of the requirements of this sub-section. Provided further that where a lunch-room exists no worker shall eat any food in the work-room. (2) The shelters or rest-room or lunch-room to be provided under sub-section (1) shall be sufficiently lighted and ventilated and shall be maintained in a cool and clean condition.

The State Government may:

- (a) prescribe the standards, in respect of construction accommodation, furniture and other equipment of shelters, rest-rooms and lunch-rooms to be provided under this section.
- (b) by notification in the Official Gazette, exempt any factory or class or description of factories from the requirements of this section.

In every factory wherein more than thirty women workers are ordinarily employed there shall be provided and maintained a suitable room or rooms for the use of children under the age of six years of such women. Such rooms shall provide adequate accommodation, shall be adequately lighted and ventilated, shall be maintained in a clean and sanitary condition and shall be under the charge of women trained in the care of children and infants.

The State Government may make rules:

- (a) prescribing the location and the standards in respect of construction, accommodation; furniture and other equipment of rooms to be provided, under this section.
- (b) requiring the provision in factories to which the section applies, of additional facilities for the care of children belonging to women workers, including the suitable provision of facilities for washing and changing their clothing.
- (c) requiring the provision in any factory of free milk or refreshment or both for such children.
- (d) requiring that facilities shall be given in any factory for the mothers of such children to feed them at the necessary intervals.

In every factory wherein five hundred or more workers are ordinarily employed the occupier shall employ in the factory such number of welfare officers as may be prescribed. The State Government may make rules.

- (a) exempting, subject to compliance with such alternative arrangements for the welfare of workers as may be prescribed, any factory or class or description of factories from compliance with any of the provisions of this Chapter.
- (b) requiring in any factory or class or description of factories that representatives of the workers employed in the factories shall be associated with the management of the welfare arrangements of the workers.

Q.16 WRITE SHORT NOTE ON APPEALS?

A.16 Where an industrial relations (normally collective) dispute generally concerning rates of pay and/or conditions of employment and involving workers/trade unions and their employers, has not been resolved using the conciliation services of the WRC, the WRC with the consent of both parties may refer the unresolved dispute to the Court under section 26(1) Industrial Relations Act 1990. A worker in a trade dispute, or a trade union on his/her behalf, may directly refer a case to the Labour Court under Section 20(1) Industrial Relations Act 1969, on condition that the worker agrees in advance to accept the Labour Court's Recommendation. This may happen, for example, where the worker initially referred the dispute to the WRC Adjudication Service but the employer did not agree to have the case heard by an Adjudication Officer. In such a case the WRC will inform the worker that the employer has not agreed to attend an Adjudication Officer hearing and that a direct referral may be made to the Labour Court under Section 20(1) of the Industrial Relations Act, 1969. Such referrals may be made using the relevant Section 20(1) complaint form.

THE LABOUR COURT RULES COMPRISE OF 6 PARTS:

Part I deals with the rules relating to appeals under the Unfair Dismissals Acts 1977-2015 and the Employment Equality Acts 1998-2015.

Part II deals with the rules relating to other employment enactments.

Part III deals with the procedures at hearing for all Part I and Part II cases.

Part IV and Part V deal with industrial relations cases under section 13(9) and section 20(1) and 20(2) of the Industrial Relations Act 1969 and section 26(1) of the Industrial Relations Act 1990 and the procedures at hearing of industrial relations cases.

Part VI deals with compliance notices.

HEARINGS: Labour Court hearings take place in Dublin and a number of venues around the country. If an interpreter or other support is required, this request should be stated on the Form when submitting the appeal. Hearings are normally scheduled for 90 minutes but depending on the complexity of the case may be scheduled for a longer period.

CONDUCT OF HEARING: The conduct of the hearing will be regulated by the Chairman of the Division of the Court hearing the case. A party to the case may be represented by: -

1. A Trade Union Representative,
2. A Representative of an Employers Organisation,
3. Solicitor or Counsel,
4. With the consent of the Court, any other person of their choosing.
5. A Court Secretary attends the hearing to support the members of the Division in an administrative capacity. Parties should arrive at the hearing venue at least 15 minutes before the hearing commences. The Court Secretary will be available on arrival to explain the formalities and protocol and for the parties to sign in before the hearing begins.

COURT PROCEEDINGS ON THE DAY OF HEARING: Parties should arrive at the hearing venue at least 15 minutes before the hearing commences. The Court Secretary will be available on arrival to explain the formalities and protocol and for the parties to sign in before the hearing begins. The Court Secretary will supply the names of the Court members prior to the start of the hearing. During the hearing the Chair of the Court may be addressed as “Chairman” or “Madam Chairman” and the members of the Court as Mr X or Ms X. The Court Secretary shall announce the case and the parties will stand when the Court enters and leaves the Court. Except in such cases as the Court considers it convenient to take the written submissions as read, each party will read their submission in turn and will then be invited to comment on the other party’s submission. This should not be taken as a further opportunity to re-state their case; rather it is simply an opportunity to comment on the opposing submission. To fully understand the case being presented, the Court will then proceed to ask questions of both parties.

WITNESSES AND EXAMINATION UNDER OATH: In employment rights cases, the Court may take sworn evidence. Witnesses will be required to swear an oath or make an affirmation before the commencement of the hearing. Attendance of witnesses is the responsibility of the party calling the witness. The Court may decide that it is not necessary to hear from all witnesses identified by the parties. In limited circumstances, the Court may compel a witness to attend by issuing a formal witness summons. Witnesses are first questioned by their own side, and then cross examined by the other side; members of the Court may also ask questions of the witness.

COURT ISSUES ITS RECOMMENDATION/DETERMINATION/DECISION:

After the hearing the Court will issue a written Recommendation/Determination/Decision as soon as is practical after the close of the hearing, usually within three weeks in industrial relations disputes and within six weeks in employment rights cases. Employment rights Determinations are appealable on a point of law only to the High Court and may be subject to judicial review. The Labour Court cannot award legal costs.

Q.17 EXPLAIN THE AMOUNT OF COMPENSATION?

A.17 (1) Subject to the provisions of this Act the amount of compensation shall be as follows namely:
- where death results from the injury an amount equal to fifty per cent of the monthly wages of the deceased workman multiplied by the relevant factor; or an amount of fifty thousand rupees whichever is more; where permanent total disablement results from the injury an amount equal to sixty per cent of the monthly wages of the injured workman multiplied by the relevant factor; or an amount of sixty thousand rupees whichever is more.

Explanation I : For the purpose of clause (a) and clause (b) relevant factor in relation to a workman means the factor specified in the second column of Schedule IV against the entry in the first column of that Schedule specifying the number of years which are the same as the completed years of the age of the workman on his birthday immediately preceding the date on which the compensation fell due.

Explanation II: Where the monthly wages of a workman exceed two thousand rupees his monthly wages for the purposes of clause.

(a) and clause.

(b) shall be deemed to be two thousand rupees only.

(c) where permanent partial disablement results from the injury in the case of an injury specified in Part II of Schedule I such percentage of the compensation which would have been payable in the case of permanent total disablement as is specified therein as being the percentage of the loss of earning capacity caused by that injury; and in the case of an injury specified in Schedule I such percentage of the compensation payable in the case of permanent total disablement as is proportionate to the loss of earning capacity (as assessed by the qualified medical practitioner) permanently caused by the injury.

Explanation I: Where more injuries than one are caused by the same accident the amount of compensation payable under this head shall be aggregated but not so in any case as to exceed the amount which would have been payable if permanent total disablement had resulted from the injuries.

Explanation II: In assessing the loss of earning capacity for the purpose of sub-clause.

(ii) the qualified medical practitioner shall have due regard to the percentages of loss of earning capacity in relation to different injuries specified in Schedule I.

(d) where temporary disablement whether total or partial results from the injury a half monthly payment of the sum equivalent to twenty-five per cent of monthly wages of the workman to be paid in accordance with the provisions of sub-section (2).

(1A) Notwithstanding anything contained in sub-section (1) while fixing the amount of compensation payable to a workman in respect of an accident occurred outside India the Commissioner shall take into account the amount of compensation if any awarded to such workman in accordance with the law

of the country in which the accident occurred and shall reduce the amount fixed by the amount of compensation awarded to the workman in accordance with the law of that country.

(2) The half-monthly payment referred to in clause (d) of sub-section (1) shall be payable on the sixteenth day- from the date of disablement where such disablement lasts for a period of twenty-eight days or more or after the expiry of a waiting period of three days from the date of disablement where such disablement lasts for a period of less than twenty-eight days; and thereafter half-monthly during the disablement or during a period of five years whichever period is shorter :

Provided that - there shall be deducted from any lump sum or half monthly payments to which the workman is entitled the amount of any payment or allowance which the workman has received from the employer by way of compensation during the period of disablement prior to the receipt of such lump sum or of the first half monthly payment as the case may be; and no half monthly payment shall in any case exceed the amount if any by which half the amount of the monthly wages of the workman before the accident exceeds half the amount of such wages which he is earning after the accident.

Explanation: Any payment or allowance which the workmen has received from the employer towards his medical treatment shall not be deemed to be a payment or allowance received by him by way of compensation within the meaning of clause (a) of the proviso.

On the ceasing of the disablement before the date on which any half monthly payment falls due there shall be payable in respect of that half monthly a sum proportionate to the duration of the disablement in that half month. If the injury of the workman results in his death the employer shall in addition to the compensation under sub-section.

(1) deposit with the Commissioner a sum of one thousand rupees for payment of the same of the eldest surviving dependant of the workman towards the expenditure of the funeral of such workman or where the workman did not have a dependant or was not living with his dependant at the time of his death to the person who actually incurred such expenditure. 4A. Compensation to be paid when due and penalty for default Compensation under section 4 shall be paid as soon as it falls due.

(2) In cases where the employer does not accept the liability for compensation to the extent claimed he shall be bound to make provisional payment based on the extent of liability which he accepts and such payment shall be deposited with the Commissioner or made to the workman as the case may be without prejudice to the right of the workman to make any further claim. Direct that the employer shall in addition to the amount of the arrears pay simple interest thereon at the rate of twelve per cent annum or at such higher rate not exceeding the maximum of the lending rates of any scheduled bank as may be specified by the Central Government by notification in the Official Gazette on the amount due; and if in his opinion there is no jurisdiction for the delay direct that the employer shall in addition to the amount of the arrears and interest thereon pay a further sum not exceeding fifty per cent of such amount by way of penalty.

Provided that an order for the payment of penalty shall not be passed under clause (b) without giving a reasonable opportunity to the employer to show cause why it should not be passed.

Explanation: For the purposes of this sub-section "scheduled bank" means a bank for the time being included in the Second Schedule to the Reserve Bank of India Act 1934 (2 of 1934)

(3A) The interest payable under sub-section (3) shall be paid to the workman or his dependant as the case may be and the penalty shall be credited to the State Government. Method of calculating wages

in this Act and for the purpose thereof the expression "monthly wages" means the amount of wages deemed to be payable for a months' service (whether the wages are payable by the month or by whatever other period or at piece rates) and calculated as follows namely: -

where the workman has during a continuous period of not less than twelve months immediately preceding the accident been in the service of the employer who is liable to pay compensation the monthly wages of the workman shall be one-twelfth of the total wages which have fallen due for payment to him by the employer in the last twelve months of that period; where the whole of the continuous period of service immediately preceding the accident during which the workman was in the service of the employer who is liable to pay the compensation was less than one month the monthly wages of the workman shall be the average monthly amount which during the twelve months immediately preceding the accident was being earned by a workman employed on the same work by the same employer or if there was no workman so employed by a workman employed on similar work in the same locality; in other cases including cases in which it is not possible for want of necessary information to calculate the monthly wages under clause (b) the monthly wages shall be thirty times the total wages earned in respect of the last continuous period of service immediately preceding the accident from the employer who is liable to pay compensation divided by the number of days comprising such period.

Explanation: A period of service shall for the purposes of this section be deemed to be continuous which has not been interrupted by a period of absence from work exceeding fourteen days.

Q.18 WRITE THE PROCEDURE OF PROCEEDINGS BEFORE COMMISSIONER?

A.18 Under section 20 of the Act, procedure in the proceedings before the commissioner. As amended by the Workmen's Compensation (Amendment) Act, 2009 provides that the State Government may, by notification in the Official Gazette. Appoint any person who is or has been a member of a State Judicial Service for a period of not less than five years or is or has been for not less than five years an advocate. Procedure In The Proceedings Before The Commissioner.

Also, a Gazetted Officer for minimum five years, having educational qualifications and experience in personnel management. Also, for Employee's Compensation human resource development and industrial relations to be a Commissioner. For such area as may be specified in the notification. Hence, the Government may by general or special order regulate the distribution of business between them. Where more than one Commissioner has been appointed for any area. Therefore, within the meaning of the Indian Penal Code, every Commissioner shall be deemed to be a public servant. Thus, section 20, empowers the Commissioner to appoint or choose any person, possessing special knowledge of any matter relevant to the matter under inquiry, to assist him in holding the inquiry.

1. Appointment of Commissioners.
2. Reference to Commissioner and his jurisdiction.
3. Jurisdiction of Civil Court barred.
4. Venue of proceedings and transfer.
5. Form of application.
6. Power of the Commissioner to require a further deposit in case of a fatal accident.

7. Powers and procedure of Commissioners.
8. Appearance of parties.
9. Method of recording evidence.
10. Time Limit for disposal of cases relating to compensation.
11. Costs.
12. Power to submit cases.
13. Registration of agreements.
14. Effect of failure to register agreement.

POWERS AND PROCEDURE OF COMMISSIONERS: The Commissioner shall have all the powers of a Civil Court under the Code of Civil Procedure 1908 (5 of 1908) for the purpose of taking evidence on oath (which such Commissioner is hereby empowered to impose) and of enforcing the attendance of witnesses and compelling the production of documents and material objects and the Commissioner shall be deemed to be a Civil Court for all the purposes of section 195 and of Chapter XXVI of the Code of Criminal Procedure 1973 (2 of 1974).

Q.19 EXPLAIN THE EMPLOYER'S LIABILITY WHEN CONTRACTOR IS ENGAGED?

A.19 Under section 12 of the Act, it envisages the employer's liability when contractor is engaged. At times, the employer may engage a contractor instead of employing his own employees. For the purpose of doing any work in respect of his trade or business. Such a contractor then executes the work with the help of the employee engaged by him. If, any injury is caused by an accident to any of these employees.

The employer cannot be held liable, because they are not employed by him. Hence they are not his employees. But now Section 12(1) makes the employer liable for compensation to such employees hired by the contractor under following circumstances:

- 1) The contractor is engaged to do a work which is part of the trade or business of the employer (called principal).
- 2) The employees were engaged in the course of or for the purpose of his trade or business.
- 3) The accident occurred in or about the premises on which the principal employer has undertaken or undertakes to execute the work concerned.

The amount of compensation shall be calculated with reference to the wages of the employee under the employer by whom he is immediately employed. Under section 12 of the Act, the liability to pay compensation is on the principal.

It is clear law that employers are liable for the actions of their employees (assuming such actions are carried out in the course of employment). In addition to this, a recent case has concluded that the employer can also be responsible for the actions of a contractor working on its behalf.

In *Various Claimants v Barclays Bank plc (Dr Bates (deceased) and Barclays Group Litigation)* [2017] a number of individuals claimed that they suffered a sexual assault whilst attending a pre-

employment medical check. Most of the individuals were women, who were around 16 years old at the time of the assaults. They alleged that the assaults were carried out by a doctor (who has since died) who was contracted to carry out the medicals by Barclays Bank. He was not an employee of the bank, but was independently contracted to do the work.

The bank argued that they were not liable for the actions of the doctor because he was not their employee.

The High Court concluded that the relationship between the bank and the doctor was sufficient for the bank to be vicariously liable for the doctor's actions. The medical assessments were for the benefit of the bank, and were part of its business activities. The bank had control over the work of the doctor, and was very prescriptive about what he was required to do. The assaults were carried out during the work that the bank had asked the doctor to do. As the doctor had died the bank is the only route for legal recourse for the claimants. As a result, the High Court concluded that the bank was liable.

Q.20 WRITE A NOTE ON EMPLOYER'S LIABILITY FOR COMPENSATION?

A.20 (1) If personal injury is caused to a workman by accident arising out of and in the course of his employment his employer shall be liable to pay compensation in accordance with the provisions of this Chapter:

Provided that the employer shall not be so liable -

- (a) in respect of any injury which does not result in the total or partial disablement of the workman for a period exceeding three days.
- (b) in respect of any injury not resulting in death or permanent total disablement caused by an accident which is directly attributable to.

The workman having been at the time thereof under the influence of drink or drugs or the wilful disobedience of the workman to an order expressly given or to a rule expressly framed for the purpose of securing the safety of workmen or the wilful removal or disregard by the workman of any safety guard or other device he knew to have been provided for the purpose of securing the safety of workman. (2) If a workman employed in any employment specified in Part A of Schedule III contracts any disease specified therein as an occupational disease peculiar to that employment or if a workman whilst in the service of an employer in whose service he has been employed for a continuous period of not less than six months (which period shall not include a period of service under any other employer in the same kind of employment) in any employment specified in Part B of Schedule III contracts any disease specified therein as an occupational disease peculiar to that employment or if a workman whilst in the service of one or more employers in any employment specified in Part C of Schedule III for such continuous period as the Central Government may specify in respect of each such employment contracts any disease specified therein as an occupational disease peculiar to that employment the contracting of the disease shall be deemed to be as injury by accident within the meaning of this section and unless the contrary is proved the accident shall be deemed to have arisen out of and in the course of the employment .

That a workman whilst in the service of one or more employers in any employment specified in Part C of Schedule III has contracted a disease specified therein as an occupational disease peculiar to that employment during a continuous period which is less than the period specified under this sub-section for that employment; and that the disease has arisen out of and in the course of the employment the

contracting of such disease shall be deemed to be an injury by accident within the meaning of this section : Provided further that if it is proved that a workman who having served under any employer in any employment specified in Part B of Schedule III or who having served under one or more employers in any employment specified in Part C of that Schedule for a continuous period specified under this sub-section for that employment and he has after the cessation of such service contracted any disease specified in the said Part B or the said Part C as the case may be as an occupational disease peculiar to the employment and that such disease arose out of the employment the contracting of the disease shall be deemed to be injury by accident within the meaning of this section.

(2A) If a workman employed in any employment specified in Part C of Schedule III contracts any occupational disease peculiar to that employment the contracting whereof is deemed to be an injury by accident within the meaning of this section and such employment was under more than one employer all such employers shall be liable for the payment of the compensation in such proportion as the Commissioner may in the circumstances deem just.

(3) The Central Government or the State Government after giving by notification in the Official Gazette not less than three months' notice of its intention so to do may by a like notification add any description of employment to the employments specified in Schedule III and shall specify in the case of employments so added the diseases which shall be deemed for the purposes of this section to be occupational diseases peculiar to those employments respectively and thereupon the provisions of sub-section (2) shall apply in the case of a notification by the Central Government within the territories to which this Act extends or in case of and notification by the State Government within the State as if such diseases had been declared by this Act to be occupational diseases peculiar to those employments.

Save as provided by sub-sections (2), (2A) and (3) no compensation shall be payable to a workman in respect of any disease unless the disease is directly attributable to a specific injury by accident arising out of and in the course of his employment. Nothing herein contained shall be deemed to confer any right to compensation on a workman in respect of any injury if he has instituted in a civil court a suit for damages in respect of the injury against the employer or any other person; and no suit for damages shall be maintainable by a workman in any court of law in respect of any injury –

(a) if he has instituted a claim to compensation in respect of the injury before a Commissioner.

(b) if an agreement has been come to between the workman and his employer providing for the payment of compensation in respect of the injury in accordance with the provisions of this Act.

NAAC ACCREDITED

PAPER CODE 406,

INTERPRETATION OF STATUTES SEMESTER 8

QUES 1. WHAT IS THE MEANING OF INTERPRETATION OF STATUTES?

Enacted laws, especially the modern acts and rules, are drafted by legal experts and it could be expected that the language used will leave little room for interpretation or construction. But the experience of all those who have to bear and share the task of application of the law has been different.

Interpretation means the art of finding out the true sense of an enactment by giving the words of the enactment their natural and ordinary meaning.

It is the process of ascertaining the true meaning of the words used in a statute. The Court is not expected to interpret arbitrarily and therefore there have been certain principles which have evolved out of the continuous exercise by the Courts. These principles are sometimes called 'rules of interpretation'.

The object of interpretation of statutes is to determine the intention of the legislature conveyed expressly or impliedly in the language used. As stated by SALMOND, "by interpretation or According to Salmond interpretation or construction is the process by which

the courts seek to ascertain the meaning of the legislature through the medium of authoritative forms in which it is expressed.”

It has been said that there is a distinction between the two expressions.

As explained by Cooley: “Interpretation differs from construction in the sense that the former is the art of finding out the true sense of any form of words; i.e. the sense that their author intended to convey. Construction on the other hand, is the drawing of conclusions, respecting the subjects that lie beyond the direct expression of the text. This distinction has been widely criticized.

Interpretation of statute is the process of ascertaining the true meaning of the words used in a statute. When the language of the statute is clear, there is no need for the rules of interpretation. But, in certain cases, more than one meaning may be derived from the same word or sentence. It is, therefore, necessary to interpret the statute to find out the real intention of the statute.

QUES 2. WHAT IS THE NEED FOR INTERPRETATION OF STATUES?

Interpretation of Statutes is required for two basic reasons:-

Legislative Language – Legislative language may be complicated for a layman, and hence may require interpretation; and

Legislative Intent – The intention of the legislature or Legislative intent assimilates two aspects: a. the concept of ‘meaning’, i.e., what the word means; and b. the concept of ‘purpose’ and ‘object’ or the ‘reason’ or ‘spirit’ pervading through the statute.

QUES 3. WHAT ARE THE IMPORTATNT ASPECTS OF INTERPRETATION OF STATUES?

Some Important points to be taken care of in the context of interpreting Statutes:

Intention of the legislature.

Statute must be read as a whole in its Context.

Statute should be Construed so as to make it Effective and Workable – if statutory provision is ambiguous and capable of various constructions, then that construction must be adopted which will give meaning and effect to the other provisions of the enactment rather than that which will give none.

If meaning is plain, effect must be given to it irrespective of consequences.

The process of construction combines both the literal and purposive approaches. The purposive construction rule highlights that you should shift from literal construction when it leads to absurdity.

Construction is the process by which the courts seek to ascertain the meaning of the legislature through the medium of authoritative forms in which it is expressed.”

In the process of interpretation, several aids are used. They may be statutory or non-statutory.

Statutory aids may be illustrated by the General Clauses Act, 1897 and by specific definitions contained in individuals Acts whereas non-statutory aids are illustrated by common law rules of interpretation (including certain presumptions relating to interpretation) and also by case-laws relating to the interpretation of statutes. Necessity of interpretation would arise only where the language of a statutory provision is ambiguous, not clear or where two views are possible or where the provision gives a different meaning defeating the object of the statute.

If the language is clear and unambiguous, no need of interpretation would arise. In this regard, a Constitution Bench of five Judges of the Supreme Court in R.S. Nayak v A.R. Antulay, has held:

“... If the words of the Statute are clear and unambiguous, it is the plainest duty of the Court to give effect to the natural meaning of the words used in the provision. The question of construction arises only in the event of an ambiguity or the plain meaning of the words used in the Statute would be self-defeating.” Again Supreme Court in Grasim Industries Ltd. v Collector of Customs, Bombay, has followed the same principle and observed:

“Where the words are clear and there is no obscurity, and there is no ambiguity and the intention of the legislature is clearly conveyed, there is no scope for court to take upon itself the task of amending or altering the statutory provisions.”

The purpose of Interpretation of Statutes is to help the Judge to ascertain the intention of the Legislature – not to control that intention or to confine it within the limits, which the Judge may deem reasonable or expedient.

The correct is one that best harmonises the words with the object of the statute As stated by Iyer J. “to be literal in meaning is to see the skin and miss the soul. The judicial key of construction is the composite perception of the deha and the dehi of the provision.” According to Blackstone the fairest and rational method for interpreting a statute is by exploring the intention of the Legislature through the most natural and probable signs which are ‘either the words, the context, the subject-matter, the effects and consequence, or the spirit and reason of the law’.

In *Manmohan Das Shah v. Bishun Das*, the Supreme Court held that-

"The ordinary rule of construction is that a provision of a Statute must be construed in accordance with the language used therein unless there are compelling reasons. Such as, where a literal construction would reduce the provision to absurdity or prevent the manifest intention of the legislature from being carried out. There is no reason why the word "or" should be construed otherwise than in its ordinary meaning. If the construction suggested by Mr. Desai were to be accepted and the word "or" were to be construed as meaning "and", it would mean that the construction should not only be such as materially alters the accommodation but is also such that it would substantially diminish its value."

In *Kamta Prasad Aggarwal v. Executive Engineer, Ballabgarh*, the Apex Court held that "depending upon the context, "or" may be read as "and" but the Court would not do it unless it is so obliged because "or" does not generally mean "and" and "and" does not generally mean "or".

Furthermore, again in *Hyderabad Asbestos Cement Products v. Union of India*, the Court restated the rule for interpretation of the words ‘and’ and ‘or’ and held as that -

"The language of the rule is plain and simple. It does not admit of any doubt in interpretation. Provisos 1(i) and 2(i) are separated by the use of conjunction "and". They have to be read conjointly. The requirement of both the provisos has to be satisfied to avail the benefit."

Following are examples of few cases when the rule of interpreting the word “or” as normally disjunctive and “and” as normally conjunctive has been forgone by the Judges to prevent injustice or to give effect to the real purpose of the Statute-

To prevent use of arbitrary power the words ‘owner or master’ as they occur in Section 1(2) of the Oil in Navigation Waters Act, 1955 were construed by the House of Lords to mean ‘owner and master’ making both of them guilty of the offence under that Section as reading of “or” as “or” would have produced as absurd result of leaving it to the Executive to select either the owner or master for being prosecuted without the Act giving any guidance. Such a result would have been against constitutional practice.

To ensure fulfillment of duties
The expression ‘established or incorporated’ used in University Grants Commission Act was read as ‘established and incorporated’ having regard to the constitutional scheme and in order to ensure that the Act is able to achieve its objectives and the University Grants Commission is able to perform its duties and responsibilities.

Negative and Positive Condition
A distinction may be made between positive and negative condition prescribed by a Statute for acquiring a right or benefit. Positive conditions separated by “or” are read in the alternative but negative conditions connected by “or” are construed as cumulative and “or” is read as “nor” or “and”.

Prevention of Crime
In section 7 of the Official Secrets Act, 1920, which reads ‘Any person who attempts to commit any offence under the principal Act or this Act, or solicits or incites or endeavors to persuade another person to commit an offence, or aids or abets and does any act preparatory to the commission of an offence’, the word “and” printed in Italics was read as “or” for by reading “and” as “and” the result produced was unintelligible and absurd and against the clear intention of the Legislature. Thus even a person who does an act preparatory to the commission of an offence is equally liable.

Welfare of the Public

Section 3(b)(i) of the Drugs Act, 1940, (before its amendment in 1962) defined drug as follows: 'All medicines for internal or external use of human beings or animals and all substances intended to be used for in the diagnosis, treatment, mitigation or prevention of disease in human beings or animals other than medicine and substances exclusively used or prepared for use in accordance with the Ayurvedic or Unani systems of medicine'. The italicized word "and" in this definition was read disjunctively as the context showed word "or" and "and" reveals the clear intention of the Legislature.

Speedy

Justice

In a case where the Government has been given special powers to create special courts, the words should be construed in such a manner, which ensures that effect is given to the reason for which power has been conferred on the Government. Example- Section 3 of the Prevention of Corruption Act, 1988 empowers the Government to appoint as many special judges as many judges as may be necessary for such area or for such case or group of cases, as may be specified in the notification. Construing "or" it was held that it would mean that the Government has the power to do either or both the things, i.e., the Government may, even for an area for which a special judge has been appointed, appoint a special judge for a case or group of cases. The case illustrates that the alternatives joined by "or" need not always be mutually exclusive.

Scheme of the Act

For the provisions that deal with appointment of the Manager under Mines Act, 1952, word "and" in Section 3(1)(b) is to be read disjunctively and not as being conjunctive. Having regard to legislative intent manifested by the scheme of the Act, word "and" to be construed as "or" and read disjunctively and not as being conjunctive.

Factual

Background

The words "or" and the word "and" used in rules, laws or bye-laws have specific intention as proposed by its maker and the meaning of "or" and the word "and" shall depend on the factual background under which such conjunction was used.

ut res magis valeat quam pereat

Maxwell on Interpretation of Statutes under the head 'ut res magis valeat quam pereat' states that-

If the choice is between two interpretations, the narrower of which would fail to achieve the manifest purpose of the legislation, we should avoid a construction which would reduce the legislation to futility and should rather accept the bolder construction based on the view that Parliament would legislate only for the purpose of bringing about an effective result.' 'Where alternative constructions are equally open, that alternative is to be chosen which will be consistent with the smooth working of the system which the statute purports to be regulating; and that alternative is to be rejected which will introduce uncertainty, friction or confusion into the working of the system'.

It is just not important to make the statutory provisions operative and workable, but is equally essential to make them operative in a just and reasonable manner. To give effect to this maxim, a construction of “and” and “or” is to be applied which will be consistent with the smooth working of the provisions.

Conclusion

The conjunction “and” or “or” can never be given a definite and dogmatic interpretation and the entire interpretation would depend on the intention of the maker laws or bye-laws using such conjunction.

In a latest case of 2011, Union of India v. Ind-Swift Laboratories Ltd. the Apex Court has once again laid emphasis on the need to interpret “and” and “or” in a manner that ensures the manifest intent of the Legislature is giving effect to.

It is essential to understand the need for correct interpretation of “and” and “or” as this can at times, change the entire meaning of the relevant statutory provision. The Judicature should expound the law in a manner that suppresses the evil and the wrong and advances the true meaning and scope of the Statute. The Legislature cannot predict the myriad possible future situations that might arise and it is impossible to draft a law perfect to meet all situations in future. This conflict is inevitable and thus it is the duty of the Judges to use the techniques of Interpretation to give most desired and required meaning to ensure justice prevails.

QUES 5 :WHAT ARE THE INTERNALS AIDS FOR INTERPRETATION

Laws enacted by the legislatures are interpreted by the judiciary. Enacted laws, specially the modern Acts and Rules, are drafted by legal experts and it could be expected that the language will leave little room for interpretation or construction. But the experience of all who have to hear and share the task of application of law, has been different. It is quite often observed that courts are busy unfolding the meaning of ambiguous words and expressions and resolving inconsistencies. The age old process of the application of the enacted laws has led to formulation of certain rules of interpretation or construction.

The object of interpretation of statutes is to determine the intention of the legislature conveyed expressly or impliedly in the language used.

In *Santi swarup Sarkar v. pradeep kumar sarkar*, the Supreme Court held that if two interpretations are possible of the same statute, the one which validates the statute must be preferred.

Broadly speaking, there are two kinds of interpretation:

Literal Interpretation

Logical Interpretation

Internal Aids of Interpretation are:-

A. Long Title

It is now settled that Long Title of an Act is a part of the Act and is admissible as an aid to its construction. The long title which often precedes the preamble must be distinguished with the short title; the former taken along with the preamble or even in its absence is a good guide regarding the object, scope or purpose of the Act, whereas the latter being only an abbreviation for purposes of reference is not a useful aid to construction.

B. Preamble

The preamble of a statute like the long title is a part of the Act and is an admissible aid to construction. Although not an enacting part, the preamble is expected to express the scope, object and purpose of the Act more comprehensively than the long title. It may recite the ground and cause of making the statute, the evils sought to be remedied or the doubts which may be intended to be settled. In the words of SIR JOHN NICHOLL : It is to the preamble more specifically that we are to look for the reason or spirit of every statute, rehearsing this,

as it ordinarily does, the evils sought to be remedied, or the doubts purported to be removed by the statute, and so evidencing, in the best and most satisfactory manner, the object or intention of the Legislature in making or passing the statute itself.

C. Preamble to Constitution

The Preamble of the Constitution like the Preamble of any statute furnishes the key to open the mind of the makers of the Constitution more so because the Constituent Assembly took great pains in formulating it so that it may reflect the essential features and basic objectives of the Constitution. The Preamble is a part of the Constitution. The Preamble embodies the fundamentals underlining the structure of the Constitution. It was adopted by the Constituent Assembly after the entire Constitution has been adopted.

The true functions of the Preamble is to expound the nature and extend and application of the powers actually confirmed by the Constitution and not substantially to create them. The Constitution, including the Preamble, must be read as a whole and in case of doubt interpreted consistent with its basic structure to promote the great objectives stated in the preamble. But the Preamble can neither be regarded as the source of any substantive power nor as a source of any prohibition or limitation.

D. Headings

The view is now settled that the Headings or Titles prefixed to sections or group of sections can be referred to in construing an Act of the Legislature. But conflicting opinions have been expressed on the question as to what weight should be attached to the headings. A Heading², according to one view, is to be regarded as giving the key to the interpretation of the clauses ranged under it, unless the wording is inconsistent with such interpretation; and so the headings might be treated as preambles to the provisions following them.³

E. Marginal Notes

In the older statutes marginal notes were not inserted by the legislature and hence were not part of the statute and could not be referred to for the purpose of construing the statute. If they are also enacted by the legislature they can be referred to for the purpose of interpretation. In the case of the Indian Constitution, the marginal notes have been enacted by the Constituent Assembly and hence they may be referred to for interpreting the Articles of the Constitution. If the words used in the enactment are clear and unambiguous, the marginal

note cannot control the meaning, but in case of ambiguity or doubt, the marginal note may be referred to.

F. Punctuation

Punctuation means to mark with points and to make points with usual stops. It is the art of dividing sentences by point or mark. Is the Court entitled to use punctuation also while interpreting the statutes? Punctuation is considered as a minor element in the construction of statutes.

G. Illustrations

Illustrations appended to a section from part of the statute and although forming no part of the section, are of relevance and value in the construction of the text of the section and they should not be readily rejected as repugnant to the section. It would be the very last resort of construction to make this assumption. The great usefulness of the Illustrations which have, although not part of the sections, been expressly furnished by the Legislature as helpful in the working and application of the statute, should not be thus impaired.

H. Definition Section

These do not take away the ordinary and natural meaning of the words, but as used: (i) to extend the meaning of a word to include or cover something, which would not normally be covered or included; and (ii) to interpret ambiguous words and words which are not plain or clear.

I. Proviso

The proper function of a proviso is to except and to deal with a case which would otherwise fall within the general language of the main enactment and its effect is confined to that case. It is a qualification of the preceding enactment which is expressed in terms too general to be quite accurate. As a general rule, a proviso is added to an enactment to qualify or create an exception to what is in the enactment and ordinarily, a proviso is not interpreted as stating a general rule. Normally, a proviso does not travel beyond the provision to which it is a proviso. It craves out an exception to the main provision to which it has been enacted as a proviso and to no other.

J. Explanation

The object of an Explanation to a statutory provision is –

to explain the meaning and intent of the Act itself,

where there is any obscurity or vagueness in the main enactment, to clarify the same so as to make it consistent with the dominant object which it seems to subserve,

to provide an additional support to the dominant object of the Act in order to make it meaningful and purposeful,

an Explanation cannot in any way interfere with or change the enactment or any part thereof but where some gap is left which is relevant for the purpose of the Explanation, in order to suppress the mischief and advance the object of the Act it can help or assist the court in interpreting the true purport and intent of the enactment, and

it cannot, however, take away a statutory right with which any person under a statute has been clothed or set at naught the working of an Act by becoming an hindrance in the interpretation of the same.

QUES 6. EXPLAIN CONSTITUTIONAL INTERPRETATION?

The letters of the constitution are fairly static and not very easy to change but the laws enacted by the legislature reflect the current state of people and are very dynamic. To ensure that the new laws are consistent with the basic structure of the constitution, the constitution must be interpreted in a broad and liberal manner giving effect to all its parts and the presumption must be that no conflict or repugnancy was intended by its framers. Applying the same logic, the provisions relating to fundamental rights have been interpreted broadly and liberally in favor of the subject. Similarly, various legislative entries mentioned in the Union, State, and Concurrent list have been construed liberally and widely. There are basically three types of interpretation of the constitution.

Historical interpretation

Ambiguities and uncertainties while interpreting the constitutional provisions can be clarified by referring to earlier interpretative decisions.

Contemporary interpretation

The Constitution must be interpreted in the light of the present scenario. The situation and circumstances prevalent today must be considered.

Harmonious Construction

It is a cardinal rule of construction that when there are in a statute two provisions which are in such conflict with each other, that both of them cannot stand together, they should possibly be so interpreted that effect can be given to both. And that a construction which renders either of them inoperative and useless should not be adopted except in the last resort.

The Supreme Court held in *Re Kerala Education Bill* that in deciding the fundamental rights, the court must consider the directive principles and adopt the principle of harmonious construction so two possibilities are given effect as much as possible by striking a balance.

In *Qureshi v. State of Bihar*, The Supreme Court held that while the state should implement the directive principles, it should be done in such a way so as not to violate the fundamental rights.

In *Bhatia International v Bulk trading SA*, it was held that if more than one interpretation is possible for a statute, then the court has to choose the interpretation which depicts the intention of the legislature.

Interpretation of the preamble of the Constitution

The preamble cannot override the provisions of the constitution.

In *Re Berubari*, the Supreme Court held that the Preamble was not a part of the constitution and therefore it could not be regarded as a source of any substantive power.

In *Keshavananda Bharati's* case, the Supreme Court rejected the above view and held the preamble to be a part of the constitution. The constitution must be read in the light of the preamble. The preamble could be used for the amendment power of the parliament under Art.368 but basic elements cannot be amended.

The 42nd Amendment has inserted the words “Secularism, Socialism, and Integrity” in the preamble.

General rules of interpretation of the Constitution

If the words are clear and unambiguous, they must be given the full effect.

The constitution must be read as a whole.

Principles of harmonious construction must be applied.

The Constitution must be interpreted in a broad and literal sense.

The court has to infer the spirit of the Constitution from the language.

Internal and External aids may be used while interpreting.

The Constitution prevails over other statutes.

Principles of Constitutional Interpretation

The following principles have frequently been discussed by the courts while interpreting the Constitution:

- Principle of colourable legislation
- Principle of pith and substance
- Principle of eclipse
- Principle of Severability
- Principle of territorial nexus
- Principle of implied powers

Principle of Colourable Legislation

The doctrine of colourability is the idea that when the legislature wants to do something that it cannot do within the constraints of the constitution, it colours the law with a substitute purpose which will still allow it to accomplish its original goal.

Maxim: “Quando aliquid prohibetur ex directo, prohibetur et per obliquum” which means what cannot be done directly cannot also be done indirectly.

The rule relates to the question of legislative competence to enact a law. Colourable Legislation does not involve the question of bonafides or malafides. A legislative transgression may be patent, manifest or direct or may be disguised, covert or indirect. It is also applied to the fraud of Constitution.

In India ‘the doctrine of colourable legislation’ signifies only a limitation of the law-making power of the legislature. It comes into picture while the legislature purporting to act within its power but in reality, it has transgressed those powers. So the doctrine becomes applicable whenever legislation seeks to do in an indirect manner what it cannot do directly. If the impugned legislation falls within the competence of legislature, the question of doing something indirectly which cannot be done directly does not arise.

In our Constitution, this doctrine is usually applied to Article 246 which has demarcated the Legislative competence of the Parliament and the State Legislative Assemblies by outlining the different subjects under list I for the Union, List II for the States and List III for the both as mentioned in the seventh schedule.

This doctrine comes into play when a legislature does not possess the power to make law upon a particular subject but nonetheless indirectly makes one. By applying this principle the fate of the Impugned Legislation is decided.

Principle of pith and substance

Pith means ‘true nature’ or essence of something’ and substance means ‘the most important or essential part of something’. The basic purpose of this doctrine is to determine under which head of power or field i.e. under which list (given in the seventh schedule) a given piece of legislation falls.

Union & State Legislatures are supreme within their respective fields. They should not encroach/ trespass into the field reserved to the other. If a law passed by one trespass upon the field assigned to the other—the Court by applying Pith & Substance doctrine, resolve the difficulty & declare whether the legislature concerned was competent to make the law.

If the pith & substance of the law (i.e. the true object of the legislation) relates to a matter within the competence of the legislature which enacted it, it should be held *intra vires*—though the legislature might incidentally trespass into matters, not within its competence. The true character of the legislation can be ascertained by having regard—to the enactment as a whole — to its object – to the scope and effect of its provisions.

Case: State of Bombay v. FN Balsara

Bombay Prohibition Act, 1949 which prohibited sale & possession of liquors in the State, was challenged on the ground that it incidentally encroached upon Imports & Exports of

liquors across custom frontier – a Central subject. It was contended that the prohibition, purchase, use, possession, and sale of liquor will affect its import. The court held that act valid because the pith & substance fell under Entry 8 of State List and not under Entry 41 of Union List.

Principle of eclipse

The Doctrine of Eclipse says that any law inconsistent with Fundamental Rights is not invalid. It is not dead totally but overshadowed by the fundamental right. The inconsistency (conflict) can be removed by a constitutional amendment to the relevant fundamental right so that eclipse vanishes and the entire law becomes valid.

All laws in force in India before the commencement of the Constitution shall be void in so far they are inconsistent with the provisions of the Constitution. Any law existing before the commencement of the Constitution and inconsistent with the provision of Constitution becomes inoperative on commencement of Constitution. But the law does not become dead. The law remains a valid law in order to determine any question of law incurred before the commencement of the Constitution. An existing law only becomes eclipsed to the extent it comes under the shadow of the FR.

Case: Keshavan Madhava Menon v. The State of Bombay

In this case, the law in question was an existing law at the time when the Constitution came into force. That existing law imposed on the exercise of the right guaranteed to the citizens of India by article 19(1)(g) restrictions which could not be justified as reasonable under clause (6) as it then stood and consequently under article 13(1) that existing law became void “to the extent of such inconsistency”.

The court said that the law became void not in to or for all purposes or for all times or for all persons but only “to the extent of such inconsistency”, that is to say, to the extent it became inconsistent with the provisions of Part III which conferred the fundamental rights of the citizens.

Thus the Doctrine of Eclipse provides for the validation of Pre-Constitution Laws that violate fundamental rights upon the premise that such laws are not null and void ab initio but become unenforceable only to the extent of such inconsistency with the fundamental rights. If any subsequent amendment to the Constitution removes the inconsistency or the conflict of the

existing law with the fundamental rights, then the Eclipse vanishes and that particular law again becomes active again.

Principle of Severability

The doctrine of severability provides that if an enactment cannot be saved by construing it consistent with its constitutionality, it may be seen whether it can be partly saved. Article 13 of the Constitution of India provides for Doctrine of severability which states that-

All laws in force in India before the commencement of Constitution shall be void in so far they are inconsistent with the provisions of the Constitution.

The State shall not make any law which takes away/ shortens the rights conferred by Part III of the Constitution i.e. Fundamental Rights. Any law made in contravention of the provisions of the Constitution shall be void and invalid. The invalid part shall be severed and declared invalid if it is really severable. (That is, if the part which is not severed can meaningfully exist without the severed part.) Sometimes the valid and invalid parts of the Act are so mixed up that they cannot be separated from each other. In such cases, the entire Act will be invalid.

Case: AK Gopalan v. State of Madras

In this case, the Supreme Court said that in case of repugnancy to the Constitution, only the repugnant provision of the impugned Act will be void and not the whole of it, and every attempt should be made to save as much as possible of the Act. If the omission of the invalid part will not change the nature or the structure of the object of the legislature, it is severable. It was held that except Section 14 all other sections of the Preventive Detention Act, 1950 were valid, and since Section 14 could be severed from the rest of the Act, the detention of the petitioner was not illegal.

Principle of Territorial Nexus

Article 245 (2) of the Constitution of India makes it amply clear that 'No law made by Parliament shall be deemed to be invalid on the ground that it would have extra-territorial operation'. Thus a legislation cannot be questioned on the ground that it has extra-territorial operation. It is well-established that the Courts of our country must enforce the law with the machinery available to them, and they are not entitled to question the authority of the Legislature in making a law which is extra-territorial. The extra-territorial operation does not

invalidate a law. But some nexus with India may still be necessary in some of the cases such as those involving taxation statutes.

The Doctrine of Territorial Nexus can be invoked under the following circumstances-

Whether a particular state has extra-territorial operation.

If there is a territorial nexus between the subject- matter of the Act and the state making the law

It signifies that the object to which the law applies need not be physically located within the territorial boundaries of the state, but must have a sufficient territorial connection with the state. A state may levy a tax on a person, property, object or transaction not only when it is situated within its territorial limits, but also when it has a sufficient and real territorial connection with it. Nexus test was applied to the state legislation also

Case: Tata Iron & Steel Company v. Bihar State

The State of Bihar passed a Sales Tax Act for levy of sales tax whether the sale was concluded within the state or outside if the goods were produced, found and manufactured in the state. The court held there was sufficient territorial nexus and upheld the Act as valid. Whether there is sufficient nexus between the law and the object sought to be taxed will depend upon the facts and circumstances of a particular case.

It was pointed out that sufficiency of the territorial connection involved a consideration of two elements- a) the connection must be real and not illusory b) the liability sought to be imposed must be pertinent to that connection.

Principle of Implied powers

Laws which are necessary and proper for the execution of the power or incidental to such power are called implied powers and these laws are presumed to be constitutional. In other words, constitutional powers are granted in general terms out of which implied powers must necessarily arise. Likewise, constitutional restraints are put in general terms out of which implied restraints must also necessarily establish.

This is a Legal principle which states that, in general, the rights and duties of a legislative body or organization are determined from its functions and purposes as specified in its constitution or charter and developed in practice.

Conclusion

The Constitution is the supreme and fundamental law of our country. Since it is written in the form of a statute, the general principles of statutory interpretation are applicable to the interpretation of the constitution as well. It is important to note that the constitution itself endorses the general principles of interpretation through Article 367(1), which states that unless the context otherwise requires, the General Clauses Act, 1897 shall apply for the interpretation of this constitution as it applies to the interpretation of an act of the legislature.

QUES.7: EXPLAIN EXTERNALS AIDS .

When internal aids are not adequate, court has to take recourse to External aids. External Aids may be parliamentary material, historical background, reports of a committee or a commission, official statement, dictionary meanings, foreign decisions, etc

. In Prabhakar Rao and others v. State of A.P. and others, O. Chennappa, Reddy J. has observed : Where internal aids are not forthcoming, we can always have recourse to external aids to discover the object of the legislation. External aids are not ruled out. This is now a well settled principle of modern statutory construction.☐

A. Parliamentary History, Historical Facts and Surrounding Circumstances

Historical setting cannot be used as an aid if the words are plain and clear. If the wordings are ambiguous, the historical setting may be considered in order to arrive at the proper construction. Historical setting covers parliamentary history, historical facts, statement of objects and reasons, report of expert committees.

Recently, the Supreme Court in R. Chaudhuri v State of Punjab and others, has stated that it is a settled position that debates in the Constituent Assembly may be relied upon as an aid to interpret a Constitutional provision because it is the function of the Court to find out the intention of the framers of the Constitution.

B. Social, Political and Economic Developments and Scientific Inventions

A Statute must be interpreted to include circumstances or situations which were unknown or did not exist at the time of enactment of the statute. Any relevant changes in the social conditions and technology should be given due weightage. Courts should take into account all these developments while construing statutory provisions.

In *P. Gupta v. Union of India*, it was stated – The interpretation of every statutory provision must keep pace with changing concepts and values and it must, to the extent to which its language permits or rather does not prohibit, suffer adjustments through judicial interpretation so as to accord with the requirement of the fast changing society which is undergoing rapid social and economic transformation

C. Reference to Other Statutes:

In case where two Acts have to be read together, then each part of every act has to be construed as if contained in one composite Act. However, if there is some clear discrepancy then the latter Act would modify the earlier. Where a single provision of one Act has to be read or added in another, then it has to be read in the sense in which it was originally construed in the first Act. In this way the whole of the first Act can be mentioned or referred in the second Act even though only a provision of the first one was adopted.

In case where an old Act has been repealed, it loses its operative force. Nevertheless, such a repealed part may still be taken into account for construing the unrepealed part.

For the purpose of interpretation or construction of a statutory provision, courts can refer to or can take help of other statutes. It is also known as statutory aids. The General Clauses Act, 1897 is an example of statutory aid. The application of this rule of construction has the merit of avoiding any contradiction between a series of statutes dealing with the same subject, it allows the use of an earlier statute to throw light on the meaning of a phrase used in a later statute in the same context.

On the same logic when words in an earlier statute have received an authoritative exposition by a superior court, use of same words in similar context in a later statute will give rise to a presumption that the legislature intends that the same interpretation should be followed for construction of those words in the later statute.

D. Dictionaries

When a word is not defined in the statute itself, it is permissible to refer to dictionaries to find out the general sense in which that word is understood in common parlance. However, in the selection of one out of the various meanings of a word, regard must always be had to the scheme, context and legislative history.

E. Judicial Decisions:

When judicial pronouncements are been taken as reference it should be taken into note that the decisions referred are Indian, if they are foreign it should be ensured that such a foreign country follows the same system of jurisprudence as ours and that these decisions have been taken in the ground of the same law as ours. These foreign decisions have persuasive value only and are not binding on Indian courts and where guidance is available from binding Indian decisions; reference to foreign decisions is of no use.

F. Other Materials

Similarly, Supreme Court used information available on internet for the purpose of interpretation of statutory provision in *Ramlal v. State of Rajasthan*. Courts also refer passages and materials from text books and articles and papers published in the journals. These external aids are very useful tools not only for the proper and correct interpretation or construction of statutory provision, but also for understanding the object of the statute, the mischief sought to be remedied by it, circumstances in which it was enacted and many other relevant matters. In the absence of the admissibility of these external aids, sometimes court may not be in a position to do justice in a case.

QUES 8. EXPLAIN LITERAL RULES.

A statutes often contains a "definitions" section, which explicitly defines the most important terms used in that statute. However, some statutes omit a definitions section entirely, or fail to define a particular term.

The literal rule, which is also known as the plain meaning rule, attempts to guide courts faced with litigation that turns on the meaning of a term not defined by the statute, or on that of a word found within a definition itself.

According to this rule, when a word does not contain any definition in a statute, it must be given its plain, ordinary, and literal meaning. If the word is clear, it must be applied, even though the intention of the legislature may have been different or the result is harsh or undesirable.

The literal rule is what the law says instead of what the law means. This is the oldest of the rules of construction and is still used today, primarily because judges are not supposed to legislate. As there is always the danger that a particular interpretation may be the equivalent

of making law, some judges prefer to adhere to the law's literal wording. When the words of a Statute are clear, plain or unambiguous, i.e. they are reasonably susceptible to only one meaning, the courts are bound to give effect to that meaning irrespective of consequences.

In *J.P. Bansal v. State of Rajasthan* 2003, SC observed that the intention of the legislature is primarily to be gathered from the language used, which means that attention should be paid to what has been said as also to what has not been said. As a consequence, a construction which requires for its support, addition, substitution, or removal of words or which results in rejection of words as meaningless has to be avoided. This is accordance with the case of *Crawford vs Spooner*, 1846, where privy council noted that the courts cannot aid the legislature's defective phrasing of an Act, they cannot add or mend, and by construction make up for deficiencies which are left there.

In *Kannailala Sur vs Parammindhi Sadhu Khan* 1957, J Gajendragadkar says that if the words used in statute are capable of only one construction then it is not open to the courts to adopt any other hypothetical construction on the ground that such construction is more consistent with the alleged objective and policy of the act..

In *M V Joshi vs M V Shimpi*, AIR 1961, relating to Food and Adulteration Act, it was contented that the act does not apply to butter made from curd. However, SC held that the word butter in the said act is plain and clear and there is no need to interpret it differently. Butter is butter whether made from milk or curd. Thus, when the language of a provision is plain and clear, court cannot enlarge the scope of the provision by interpretive process. Further, a construction which requires for its support addition of words or which results in rejection of words as meaningless has to be avoided.

ADVANTAGES

1. Proponents of the plain meaning rule claim that it prevents courts from taking sides in legislative or political issues.
2. They also point out that ordinary people and lawyers do not have extensive access to secondary sources and thus depending on the ordinary meaning of the words is the safest route
- . 3. It encourages precision in drafting.

DISADVANTAGES

1. Opponents of the plain meaning rule claim that the rule rests on the erroneous assumption that words have a fixed meaning. Words are imprecise, leading justices to impose their own prejudices to determine the meaning of a statute. However, since little else is offered as an alternative discretion-confining theory, plain meaning survives.

2. Sometimes the use of the literal rule may defeat the intention of Parliament. For instance, in the case of *Whiteley vs Chappel*, the court came to the reluctant conclusion that Whiteley could not be convicted of impersonating "any person entitled to vote" at an election, because the person he impersonated was dead. Using a literal construction of the relevant statutory provision, the deceased was not "a person entitled to vote." This, surely, could not have been the intention of Parliament. However, the literal rule does not take into account the consequences of a literal interpretation, only whether words have a clear meaning that makes sense within that context. If Parliament does not like the literal interpretation, then it must amend the legislation.

3. It obliges the courts to fall back on standard common law principles of statutory interpretation. Legislation is drawn up with these principles in mind. However, these principles may not be appropriate to constitutional interpretation, which by its nature tends to lay down general principles. It is said that it seems wrong to parcel the Constitution as if it were a Finance Act. . Clearly, the literal approach has another disadvantage in that one judge's literal interpretation might be very different from another's. Casey says: "What may seem plain to one judge may seem perverse and unreal to another."

4. It ignores the limitations of language.

5. To place undue emphasis on the literal meaning of the words is to assume an unattainable perfection in draftsmanship.

6. Judges have tended excessively to emphasise the literal meaning of statutory provisions without giving due weight to their meaning in wider contexts.

QUES 9. EXPLAIN MISCHIEF RULE.

The Mischief Rule is used by judges in statutory interpretation in order to discover legislature's intention. It essentially asks the question: By creating an Act of Parliament what was the "mischief" that the previous or existing law did not cover and this act covers.

This rule was developed by Lord Coke in Sir John Heydon's Case, 1584, where it was stated that there were four points to be taken into consideration when interpreting a statute:

1. What was the common law before the making of the act?
2. What was the "mischief or defect" for which the common law did not provide?
3. What remedy the parliament hath resolved and appointed to cure the disease of the commonwealth?
4. What is the true reason of the remedy?

The application of this rule gives the judge more discretion than the literal and the golden rule as it allows him to effectively decide on Parliament's intent. Legislative intent is determined by examining secondary sources, such as committee reports, treatises, law review articles and corresponding statutes.

The rule was further illustrated in the case of *Smith v Hughes*, 1960, where under the Street Offences Act 1959, it was a crime for prostitutes to "loiter or solicit in the street for the purposes of prostitution".

The defendants were calling to men in the street from balconies and tapping on windows. They claimed they were not guilty as they were not in the "street." The judge applied the mischief rule to come to the conclusion that they were guilty as the intention of the Act was to cover the mischief of harassment from prostitutes. This rule is of narrower application than the golden rule or the plain meaning rule, in that it can only be used to interpret a statute and only when the statute was passed to remedy a defect in the common law. This rule has often been used to resolve ambiguities in cases in which the literal rule cannot be applied.

. As seen In *Smith v Hughes*, the mischief approach gave a more sensible outcome than that of the literal approach.

Advantages

1. The Law Commission sees it as a far more satisfactory way of interpreting acts as opposed to the Golden or Literal rules.
2. It usually avoids unjust or absurd results in sentencing.

Disadvantages

1. It is seen to be out of date as it has been in use since the 16th century, when common law was the primary source of law and parliamentary supremacy was not established.
2. It gives too much power to the unelected judiciary which is argued to be undemocratic.
3. In the 16th century, the judiciary would often draft acts on behalf of the king and were therefore well qualified in what mischief the act was meant to remedy, however, such is not the case any more.

QUES 10. EXPLAIN GOLDEN RULE.

This rule of statutory interpretation allows a shift from the ordinary sense of a word(s) if the overall content of the document demands it. This rule is a modification of the literal rule. It states that if the literal rule produces an absurdity, then the court should look for another meaning of the words to avoid that absurd result.

The rule was evolved by Parke B (who later became Lord Wensleydale) in *Becke v Smith*, 1836 and in *Grey v Pearson*, 1857, who stated, "The grammatical and ordinary sense of the words is to be adhered to unless that would lead to some absurdity or some repugnance or inconsistency with the rest of the instrument in which case the grammatical and ordinary sense of the words may be modified so as to avoid the absurdity and inconsistency, but no farther." It is a very useful rule in the construction of a statute as it allows to adhere to the ordinary meaning of the words used, and to the grammatical construction, unless that is at variance with the intention of the legislature to be collected from the statute itself, or leads to any manifest absurdity or repugnance, in which case it allows the language to be varied or modified so as to avoid such inconvenience.

This rule may be used in two ways. It is applied most frequently in a narrow sense where there is some ambiguity or absurdity in the words themselves. For example, imagine there may be a sign saying "Do not use lifts in case of fire." Under the literal interpretation of this sign, people must never use the lifts, in case there is a fire. However, this would be an absurd result, as the intention of the person who made the sign is obviously to prevent people from using the lifts only if there is currently a fire nearby.

This was illustrated in the case of *Lee vs Knapp* 1967 QB where the interpretation of the word "stop" was involved. Under Road Traffic Act, 1960, a person causing an accident "shall stop" after the accident. In this case, the driver stopped after causing the accident and then

drove off. It was held that the literal interpretation of the word stop is absurd and that the requirement under the act was not fulfilled because the driver did not stop for a reasonable time so that interested parties can make inquiries from him about the accident. The second use of the golden rule is in a wider sense, to avoid a result that is obnoxious to principles of public policy, even where words have only one meaning.

Bedford vs Bedford, 1935, is another interesting case that highlighted the use of this rule. It concerned a case where a son murdered his mother and committed suicide. The courts were required to rule on who then inherited the estate, the mother's family, or the son's descendants. The mother had not made a will and under the Administration of Justice Act 1925 her estate would be inherited by her next of kin, i.e. her son. There was no ambiguity in the words of the Act, but the court was not prepared to let the son who had murdered his mother benefit from his crime. It was held that the literal rule should not apply and that the golden rule should be used to prevent the repugnant situation of the son inheriting. The court held that if the son inherits the estate that would amount to profiting from a crime and that would be repugnant to the act.

Thus, the Golden rule implies that if a strict interpretation of a statute would lead to an absurd result then the meaning of the words should be so construed so as to lead to the avoidance of such absurdity. A further corollary to this rule is that in case there are multiple constructions to effect the Golden rule the one which favors the assessee should always be taken. This rule is also known as the Rule of Reasonable Construction.

Advantages

1. This rule prevents absurd results in some cases containing situations that are completely unimagined by the law makers.
2. It focuses on imparting justice instead of blindly enforcing the law.

Disadvantages

The golden rule provides no clear means to test the existence or extent of an absurdity.

1. It seems to depend on the result of each individual case. Whilst the golden rule has the advantage of avoiding absurdities, it therefore has the disadvantage that no test exists to determine what is an absurdity.

2. This rule tends to let the judiciary overpower the legislature by applying its own standards of what is absurd and what it not.

Ques 11. EXPLAIN EJUSDEM GENERIS.

The ejusdem generis, or 'of the same genus' rule, is similar though narrower than the more general rule of noscitur a sociis. It operates where a broad or open-ended term appears following a series of more restrictive terms in the text of a statute. Where the terms listed are similar enough to constitute a class or genus, the courts will presume, in interpreting the general words that follow, that they are intended to apply only to things of the same genus as the particular items listed.

According to this rule, when particular words pertaining to a class or a genus are followed by general words, the general words are construed as limited to the things of the same kind as those specified by the class or the genus. The meaning of an expression with wider meaning is limited to the meaning of the preceding specific expressions. However, for this rule to apply, the preceding words must form a specific class or genus.

Further, this rule cannot be applied if the words with a wider meaning appear before the words with specific or narrow meaning.

In *UP State Electricity Board vs Harishankar*, SC held that the following conditions must exist for the application of this rule.

The statute contains an enumeration of specific words

2. The subject of the enumeration constitute a class or a category
3. The class or category is not exhausted by the enumeration
4. A general term is present at the end of the enumeration
5. There is no indication of a different legislative intent

Justice Hidayatullah explained the principles of this rule through the following example - In the expression, "books, pamphlets, newspapers, and other documents", private letters may not be held included if "other documents" be interpreted ejusdem generis with what goes before. But in a provision which reads, "newspapers or other documents likely to convey secrets to

the enemy", the words "other documents" would include documents of any kind and would not take their meaning from newspaper.

This was also illustrated in the case of *Ishwar Singh Bagga vs State of Rajasthan* 1987, where the words "other person", in the expression "any police officer authorized in this behalf or any other person authorized in this behalf by the State government" in Section 129 of Motor Vehicles Act, were held not to be interpreted ejusdem generis because the mention of a single species of "police officers" does not constitute a genus. It can be seen that this rule is an exception to the rule of construction that general words should be given their full and natural meaning. It is a canon of construction like many other rules that are used to understand the intention of the legislature. This rule also covers The rank principle, which goes as follows - Where a string of items of a certain rank or level is followed by general residuary words, it is presumed that the residuary words are not intended to include items of a higher rank than those specified. By specifying only items of lower rank the impression is created that higher ranks are not intended to be covered. If they were, then their mention would be expected a fortiori. For example, the phrase "tradesman, artificer, workman, labourer, or other person whatsoever" was held not to include persons above the artisan class. Similarly, the phrase "copper, brass, pewter, and tin, and all other metals" in a local Act of 1825 was held not to include precious metals such as gold and silver.

Ques 12: EXPLAIN REDDENDO SINGULA SINGULA.

The reddendo singula singulis principle concerns the use of words distributively. Where a complex sentence has more than one subject, and more than one object, it may be the right construction to render each to each, by reading the provision distributively and applying each object to its appropriate subject.

A similar principle applies to verbs and their subjects, and to other parts of speech. A typical application of this principle is where a testator says 'I devise and bequeath all my real and personal property to B'. The term devise is appropriate only to real property. The term bequeath is appropriate only to personal property.

Accordingly, by the application of the principle reddendo singula singulis, the testamentary disposition is read as if it were worded 'I devise all my real property, and bequeath all my personal property, to B'.

This rule has been applied in the case of *Koteshwar Vittal Kamat vs K Rangappa Baliga*, AIR 1969, in the construction of the Proviso to Article 304 of the Constitution which reads, "Provided that no bill or amendment for the purpose of clause (b), shall be introduced or moved in the legislature of a state without the previous sanction of the President". It was held that the word introduced applies to bill and moved applies to amendment.

Ques 13: EXPLAIN TITLE AS INTERNAL AIDS FOR INTERPRETATION.

Title of the Statute

Long title – Every Statute is headed by a long title and it gives the description about the object of an Act. For e.g. the long title of the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908, is – “An Act to consolidate and amend the laws relating to the procedure of the Courts of Civil Judicature”.

In recent times, long title has been used by the courts to interpret certain provision of the statutes. However, it is useful only to the extent of removing the ambiguity and confusions and is not a conclusive aid to interpret the provision of the statute.

Cases

In *Re Kerala Education bill*, the Supreme Court held that the policy and purpose may be deduced from the long title and the preamble.

2. In *Manohar Lal v. State of Punjab*, Long title of the Act is relied as a guide to decide the scope of the Act.

Although the title is a part of the Act, it is in itself not an enacting provision and though useful in case of ambiguity of the enacting provisions, is ineffective to control their clear meaning.

Short Title – The short title of an Act is for the purpose of reference & for its identification. It ends with the year of passing of the Act. For e.g. Section 1 of the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908, says – “This Act may be cited as the Code of Civil Procedure, 1908. It shall come into force on the first day of January, 1909.”

Even though short title is the part of the statute, it does not have any role in the interpretation of the provisions of an Act.

QUES 14: EXPLAIN PREAMBLE AS INTERNAL AIDS TO INTERPRETATION?

Preamble

The main objective and purpose of the Act are found in the Preamble of the Statute. It is a preparatory statement and contains the recitals showing the reason for enactment of the Act. For e.g. the Preamble of the Indian Penal Code, 1860, is “Whereas it is expedient to provide a general Penal Code for India; it is enacted as follows”.

The preamble is an intrinsic aid in the interpretation of an ambiguous act.

Cases

In Kashi Prasad v. State, the court held that even though the preamble cannot be used to defeat the enacting clauses of a statute, it can be treated as a key for the interpretation of the statute.

QUES 15: EXPLAIN HEADING AS INTERNAL AIDS TO INTERPRETATION?

Headings give the key to the interpretation and may be treated as preambles to the provisions following them.

Cases

1. In Krishnaiah v. State of A.P. and Ors it was held that headings prefixed to sections cannot control the plain words of the provisions. Only in the case of ambiguity or doubt, heading or sub-heading may be referred to as an aid in construing provision.

2. In Durga Thathera v. Narain Thathera and Anr the court held that the headings are like a preamble which helps as a key to the mind of the legislature but do not control the substantive section of the enactment.

QUES 16; EXPLAIN MARGINAL NOTES AS INTERNAL AIDS TO INTERPRETATION?

Marginal Notes

Marginal notes are inserted at the side of the sections in an Act and express the effect of the sections stated.

Cases

However, in *Wilkes v. Goodwin Banks, LJ*, held that the side notes are not part of the Act and hence marginal notes cannot be referred

QUES 17: EXPLAIN DEFINITIONAL CLAUSES AS INTERPRETATION OF STATUTES?

Definitional Sections/ Clauses

The object of a definition is to avoid the necessity of frequent repetitions in describing the subject matter to which the word or expression defined is intended to apply.

A definition contained in the definition clause of a particular statute, not from any other statute, should be used for the purpose of that Act.

In *Mayor of Portsmouth v Smith*, the court observed “The introduction of interpretation clause is a novelty

QUES 18: EXPLAIN ILLUSTRATION AND PROVISIO AS INTERPRETATION OF STATUTES?

Illustrations are examples provided by the legislature for better understanding of the statute.

Cases

In *Mahesh Chandra Sharma v. Raj Kumari Sharma*, it was held that illustrations are parts of the Section and help to elucidate the principles of the section.

Proviso

A proviso is to provide examples of a specific case which would otherwise fall within the general language of the main enactment. It excludes, excepts and restricts the application of a section and its effect is confined to that case.

Cases

In *CIT vs. Ajax Products Ltd*, it was held that whether a proviso is construed as restricting the main provision or as a substantive clause, it cannot be divorced from the provision to which it stands as a proviso. It must be construed harmoniously with the main enactment.

QUES 19.; EXPLAIN EXPLANATIONS, SCHEDULES AND PUNCTUATION AS INTERPRETATION OF STAUE.

Explanations

An Explanation is added to a section to elaborate upon and explain the meaning of the words appearing in the section. The purpose is not to limit the scope of the main section but to explain, clarify, subtract or include something by elaboration.

Schedules

Schedules at the end contain minute details for working out the provisions of the express enactment. The expression in the schedule however cannot override the provisions of the express enactment.

Punctuation

Punctuation is a minor element and weight be given to it only when a statute is carefully punctuated and there is no doubt about its meaning.

QUES 20: EXPLAIN LEGAL FICTION?

Legal fiction is defined as:-

1. A legal assumption that a thing is true which is either not true, or which is probably false
- . 2. An assumption of law that something which is false is true.
3. A state of facts exists which has never really existed. A legal fiction is a devise by which the law deliberately departs from the truth of things for some reason. E.g. A foreigner was treated to be a Roman citizen for the purpose of jurisdiction. Legal fiction is treated in the provisions of an enactment by using the term “is deemed”.

The deeming provision is for the purpose of assuming the existence of fact does not really exist. In *New India Assurance Co. Ltd v Complete Insulation Pvt Ltd*, the Supreme Court held that legal fiction created under S.157 of the Motor Vehicles Act, 1988, the transfer of 3rd party insurance is deemed to have effect from buyer to seller.

In *Bengal Immunity Co Ltd v State of Bihar*, The Supreme Court that the legal fiction should not be extended beyond its legitimate limits.

In *Pandurang Vinayak v State of Bombay*, the Supreme Court held that for the purpose of legal fiction, the word “ordinance” is to be read as ‘enactment’.

In *Bombay corporation v CIT Bombay*, S 43 of the Income Tax Act provided that under certain circumstances, an agent is for all the purpose of this Act, deemed to be an agent of a non-resident person. Such agent is deemed to be an assessee.

In *Avatar Singh v State of Punjab*, it was held that rules framed in contravention of the Electricity Act, 1910 are separate and hence theft of electricity is not an offence under the IPC. Legal fiction is an important subsidiary rule of interpretation of Statute. It is useful in deciding case where certain things are presumed to exist in fact of their non-existences.

INTERNATIONAL TRADE LAW (Paper Code 408)

1. Write an essay on Mercantilism.

Ans. Mercantilism is economic nationalism for the purpose of building a wealthy and powerful state. ADAM SMITH coined the term “mercantile system” to describe the system of political economy that sought to enrich the country by restraining imports and encouraging exports. This system dominated Western European economic thought and policies from the sixteenth to the late eighteenth centuries. The goal of these policies was, supposedly, to achieve a “favorable” balance of trade that would bring gold and silver into the country and also to maintain domestic employment. In contrast to the agricultural system of the physiocrats or the laissez-faire of the nineteenth and early twentieth centuries, the mercantile system served the interests of merchants and producers such as the British East India Company, whose activities were protected or encouraged by the state.

The most important economic rationale for mercantilism in the sixteenth century was the consolidation of the regional power centers of the feudal era by large, competitive nation-states. Other contributing factors were the establishment of colonies outside Europe; the growth of European commerce and industry relative to agriculture; the increase in the volume and breadth of trade; and the increase in the use of metallic monetary systems, particularly gold and silver, relative to barter transactions.

During the mercantilist period, military conflict between nation-states was both more frequent and more extensive than at any other time in history. The armies and navies of the main protagonists were no longer temporary forces raised to address a specific threat or objective, but were full-time professional forces. Each government's primary economic objective was to command a sufficient quantity of hard currency to support a military that would deter attacks by other countries and aid its own territorial expansion.

Most of the mercantilist policies were the outgrowth of the relationship between the governments of the nation-states and their mercantile classes. In exchange for paying levies and taxes to support the armies of the nation-states, the mercantile classes induced governments to enact policies that would protect their business interests against foreign Competition.

These policies took many forms. Domestically, governments would provide capital to new industries, exempt new industries from guild rules and taxes, establish monopolies over local and colonial markets, and grant titles and Pensions to successful producers. In trade policy the government assisted local industry by imposing tariffs, quotas, and prohibitions on imports of goods that competed with local manufacturers. Governments also prohibited the export of tools and capital equipment and the emigration of skilled labor that would allow foreign countries, and even the colonies of the home country, to compete in the production of manufactured goods. At the same time, diplomats encouraged foreign manufacturers to move to the diplomats' own countries.

Shipping was particularly important during the mercantile period. With the growth of colonies and the shipment of gold from the New World into Spain and Portugal, control of the oceans was considered vital to national power. Because ships could be used for merchant or military purposes, the governments of the era developed strong merchant marines. In France, Jean-Baptiste Colbert, the minister of finance under Louis XIV from

1661 to 1683, increased port duties on foreign vessels entering French ports and provided bounties to French shipbuilders.

In England, the Navigation Act of 1651 prohibited foreign vessels from engaging in coastal trade in England and required that all goods imported from the continent of Europe be carried on either an English vessel or a vessel registered in the country of origin of the goods. Finally, all trade between England and its colonies had to be carried in either English or colonial vessels. The Staple Act of 1663 extended the Navigation Act by requiring that all colonial exports to Europe be landed through an English port before being re-exported to Europe. Navigation policies by France, England, and other powers were directed primarily against the Dutch, who dominated commercial marine activity in the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries.

During the mercantilist era it was often suggested, if not actually believed, that the principal benefit of foreign trade was the importation of gold and silver. According to this view the benefits to one nation were matched by costs to the other nations that exported gold and silver, and there were no net gains from trade. For nations almost constantly on the verge of war, draining one another of valuable gold and silver was thought to be almost as desirable as the direct benefits of trade. Adam Smith refuted the idea that the wealth of a nation is measured by the size of the treasury in his famous treatise *The Wealth of Nations* a book considered to be the foundation of modern economic theory. Smith made a number of important criticisms of mercantilist doctrine. First, he demonstrated that trade, when freely initiated, benefits both parties. Second, he argued that specialization in production allows for economies of scale, which improves efficiency and growth. Finally, Smith argued that the collusive relationship between government and industry was harmful to the general population. While the mercantilist policies were designed to benefit the government and the commercial class, the doctrines of laissez-faire, or free markets, which originated with Smith, interpreted economic welfare in a far wider sense of encompassing the entire population.

While the publication of *The Wealth of Nations* is generally considered to mark the end of the mercantilist era, the laissez-faire doctrines of free-market economics also reflect a general disenchantment with the imperialist policies of nation-states. The Napoleonic Wars in Europe and the Revolutionary War in the United States heralded the end of the period of military confrontation in Europe and the mercantilist policies that supported it.

Despite these policies and the wars with which they were associated, the mercantilist period was one of generally rapid growth, particularly in England. This is partly because the governments were not very effective at enforcing the policies they espoused. While the government could prohibit imports, for example, it lacked the resources to stop the smuggling that the prohibition would create. In addition, the variety of new products that were created during the Industrial Revolution made it difficult to enforce the industrial policies that were associated with mercantilist doctrine.

By 1860 England had removed the last vestiges of the mercantile era. Industrial regulations, monopolies, and tariffs were abolished, and emigration and machinery exports were freed. In large part because of its Free Trade policies, England became the dominant economic power in Europe. England's success as a manufacturing and financial power, coupled with the United States as an emerging agricultural powerhouse, led to the resumption of protectionist pressures in Europe and the arms race between Germany, France, and England that ultimately resulted in World War I.

2. What are the concepts of Absolute Advantage and Comparative Advantage, according to David Ricardo?

Ans. Before the publication of Adam Smith's *Wealth of Nations* (1776) the prevalent theory of foreign trade was mercantilism. This doctrine suggested that a country should do all it could to increase exports, but should restrict imports and so build up 'treasure'. This view was criticised by Adam Smith. He argued that restrictions on foreign trade limited the benefits which could be obtained from market forces.

In essence, the case for free trade is the one in favour of markets on a large scale. If complete free trade were introduced the market would consist of the whole world and consumers would benefit from a wide choice of goods. Moreover, international competition would force domestic firms to keep down prices. Innovations in production techniques and product design would spread more rapidly, so benefitting consumers.

Absolute Advantage:

Smith argued that trade should be based on absolute advantage. This term describes the position when one country is absolutely more efficient at producing good A, whilst another country is absolutely 'better' at producing good B. Both countries would benefit if they specialised in producing the goods at which they have the advantage and then exchanged their products.

Thus, Britain has an absolute advantage compared to Jamaica in the production of cars whilst Jamaica has an absolute advantage in the production of tropical fruits. It will benefit both countries if they specialise and trade. Absolute advantage is a specific example of the advantages of specialisation and division of labour.

Comparative Advantage:

Smith's argument about absolute advantage was refined and developed by David Ricardo in 1817. Ricardo, improving upon Adam Smith's exposition, developed the theory of international trade based on what is known as the Principle of Comparative Advantage (Cost). International trade involves the extension of the principle of specialisation or division labour to the sphere of international exchange.

As a person specialises in the trade in which he has best advantages, a country also specialises in the production of the commodity in which it has the best natural advantages. A country may produce many things at a time, but it may have comparative advantages in the production of some commodities (say, tea or jute as in India) over others and it will specialise in those goods.

Similarly, another country would produce those goods (say, machineries and engineering goods as in Germany or Japan) in which it has comparative advantage. If these two countries produce goods according to their respective areas of comparative advantage, each country would be able to produce the goods at the lowest cost; and both these countries will gain from trading with each other. This is the substance of the principle of comparative advantage (cost).

The principle of comparative cost states that (a) international trade takes place between two countries when the ratios of comparative cost of producing goods differ, and (b) each country would specialise in producing that commodity in which it has a comparative advantage.

3. What are the sources of International Trade Law?

Ans. In domestic law, law sources basically include constitution law, common rules and precedents supplemented by the customs and law scholars' viewpoints. The law sources are different in international law. The most important source of international trade law is bilateral and multilateral treaties. Then, international commercial practice, general principles of law and trade custom law (lex mercatoria).

Treaties

In international relations, those international agreements entered into between the states and/or between one state and one international organization to exercise sovereignty is called a treaty. As per article 2, clause 1 of 1969 Vienna convention concerning treaties' law, treaty means, "An international agreement which has been made between the states in writing and was included by an international law. But agreements concluded between a state and the other states and/or international organizations to exercise incumbency and performance of business and commercial affairs are not treaties.

A treaty may include special obligations and certain legal requirements for its members such as: a convention, a charter, a protocol and a code or regulates the general framework of its members' obligations such as framework convention and outline convention or solely states the parties' viewpoints concerning a subject matter or reflects their moral obligations.

International commercial practice

International commercial practice includes operations and behavioral norms between merchants and commercial companies binding to some extent.

Another approach considers international commercial practice as an implied condition in international contracts and its binding feature arises from parties' implied agreement. According to article 1-205, clause 2 of American Uniform Commercial Code (UCC), trade practice means, "any operation or behavioral method observed regularly in a jurisdiction, profession or trade and is expected to be observed in the same contract and transaction."

General principles of law

General principles of law are those principles and rules which are general and have been recognized by different states. The principle of binding power of contracts loyal towards its provisions(pacta sunt servanda) is one of the general principles of law accepted by different law systems.

Trade custom law (lex mercatoria)

Trade custom law or mercantile law in UK law has been existed since many years ago. Generally, trade custom law features in the middle ages were as follows:

Firstly, this branch of law didn't belong to a certain state and was used in commercial relations with foreign countries. Secondly, this branch of law was based on the customs and commercial practices specially of marine trade made between the merchants. Thirdly, the commercial disputes and claims were basically settled by the merchants-not by the judges-themselves very quickly with the least procedure of proceedings based on usual customs and practices. Fourthly, the principle of equity and good faith had a special position in this legal system. In this period, the merchants established new legal institutions based on their need including bill of exchange.

Domestic laws

Another source of international trade law is the domestic laws of the states related to the considered economic and business activities. Domestic laws can be divided into public law and private law.

Public law

Each state legislates and enacts statutes to regulate economic and commercial activities in its own country and also to provide special policies and social-economic objectives. In this respect, some of the activities are forbidden, some are promoted and some become restricted. The most important of these rules and regulations are those of export and import, foreign investment and economic activities done by foreign companies and individuals, rules and regulations concerning purchase and sale of goods, currency transfer, banking, employment law , taxes and duties.

Private law

In this field of law, there are few certain rules solely concerning international economic and commercial activities in Iran, and the existing rules govern both local and foreign commercial activities. For example, the civil law and the rules of making contracts, rights and obligations of the parties and/or contract termination cases govern both local and international contracts subject to the governance of Iranian law. While in some countries there are certain local laws solely govern the international contracts. There is the same situation, in Iran, for commercial law. Commercial activities, local or foreign, are subject to commercial law and there are no certain rules but public law for foreign commercial activities in Iran.

4. Elaborate all the principles of International Trade Law.

Ans. The modern international trade regime is based on four main principles. These principles are, in no particular order of importance, Most-Favored-Nation Treatment (MFN), National Treatment (NT), tariff binding, and the general prohibition of quantitative restrictions. Each of these is codified as a separate rule in the GATT.

Treating all Countries Equally: The Principle of Most-Favored Nation

The first substantive rule of international trade that we will delve into is known as Most Favored-Nation Treatment (MFN). Most-Favored-Nation is based on the idea that every member state should treat each of its trading partners equally. Assuming that the products of country X are the same as those of country Y, a state should not give preferential treatment to the goods of one country in detriment of those of another. The importance of Most-Favored-Nation is underscored by the fact that it is addressed in Article I of the GATT. Article I of the GATT provides that any “advantage, favor, privilege or immunity” granted by a contracting party to the goods of another contracting party, “shall be accorded immediately and unconditionally to the like product” of all other contracting parties

Article I was envisioned to have two main applications. First, whenever WTO members negotiate and grant trade concessions to other countries, such concessions must automatically be extended to all other WTO Members. Second, outside of trade negotiations, whenever a WTO Member enacts legislation or certain trade-restrictive rules or requirements, it cannot, according to Most-Favored-Nation, discriminate between products from a WTO Member and the like products of any other country.

Treating all Goods Equally within a Given Market: The Principle of National Treatment

Like Most-Favored-Nation, National Treatment (NT) is a subset of the principle of non discrimination. However, National Treatment has a domestic focus. Essentially, National Treatment is based on the idea that a country should treat imported goods the same way as it treats domestically produced goods. For instance, assuming that the products that Country X imports are substantially the same as those it produces domestically, it should not offer imported products worse treatment than that offered to domestically produced goods. National Treatment has two distinct applications. The first is based on internal taxation, and the second is based on internal regulation. GATT Article III codifies National Treatment through its provisions on Internal Taxation and Internal Regulation. Ad Article III explains the rule's scope. An Ad Article is an explanatory note provided by the drafters of treaties to clarify the purpose and intended interpretation of a specific treaty provision. At its core, Article III:2 stipulates that imported products should not be subject to internal taxes or other internal charges in excess of those applied to like domestic products. Internal Taxes are those applied to a good after it has crossed a country's borders. Similarly, Article III:4 provides that imported products may not be subject to more stringent laws, regulations, or requirements than those applicable to like domestic products. Internal Regulations are those applied to a product after it has crossed a country's borders.

Tariff Binding

Most products are subject to tariffs (import taxes) upon being imported to another country. There are two different types of tariffs that can be imposed, ad valorem and specific. Ad valorem tariffs are those that are equal to a certain percentage of the value of a good. For instance, a tax equal to 10% of the value of an imported car is an ad valorem tariff. A specific duty is a tariff that does not depend on the value of the good, but is applied on a per-unit basis. A tariff of 10 Iraqi Dinars charged for each kilogram of apples imported into Iraq is considered a specific duty. Protectionism is never desirable, but this does not mean that certain types of protectionism are not better than others. It is in every country's interest that their trading partners' protectionist practices are transparent. Transparent protectionist measures make it easier for producers worldwide to make informed decisions regarding which markets they should enter and which ones they should not. Transparent protectionist measures also make it easier for countries to identify situations where their producers are being unfairly discriminated against. Accordingly, tariffs are the least undesirable of protectionist measures. One of the most important elements of the GATT is its schedule of concessions. This schedule of concessions lists the results of several bilateral trade

negotiations regarding tariff levels. If you look back to our discussion of the WTO accession process, you'll be reminded of the importance of tariff negotiations. GATT Article II codifies WTO Members' obligation to abide by negotiated tariff schedules, whereas GATT Article VIII limits the types of charges that may be applied by countries in addition to those imposed on the importation of a good. Additionally, Article II limits the charges that can be imposed on the importation of a good to those bilaterally agreed upon and listed in a country's tariff schedule. Conversely, Article VIII limits the charges that can be imposed in relation to the importation of a good, but not on the good itself. A country is free to negotiate different tariff levels for different products, but it must always abide by its MostFavored-Nation and National Treatment obligations.

Ban on Quantitative Restrictions

With only a few notable exceptions, the GATT forbids the imposition of quantitative restrictions on international trade. It should be no surprise that an agreement intended to liberalize trade would not look fondly upon measures that function as absolute barriers to it. Quantitative restrictions are usually in the form of quotas. A quota is a limit imposed on the quantity of a good that can be imported. Although quantitative restrictions may be politically popular given that their results are immediate and direct, they are not desirable from an economic perspective. The reason for this is that quantitative restrictions have a greater distortive effect on the market than any other protectionist measure. Unlike tariffs and internal measures, which affect the price of a good and leave it to importers and consumers to determine what the efficient quantity is, quantitative restrictions impair the economy's ability to determine an efficient price and quantity. A small enough quota may cause the price of a good to reach unsustainable levels, thereby forcing domestic consumers to either change their preferences or purchase goods at unrealistically high prices. Moreover, it may encourage domestic producers to increase their output of low quality goods to fill the gap between domestic demand for a good and its availability. GATT Article XI codifies the general prohibition against quantitative restrictions. However, it lists a few exceptions to this ban, including quantitative restrictions imposed to "relieve critical shortages of foodstuffs" or other essential products, and restrictions intended to remove surpluses from the market.

5. Discuss Raymond Vernon's Product Life Cycle Theory.

Ans. In 1966, Raymond Vernon published a model that described internationalisation patterns of organisations. He looked at how U.S. companies developed into multinational

corporations (MNCs) at a time when these firms dominated global trade, and per capita income in the U.S. was, by far, the highest of all the developed countries.

Raymond Vernon was part of the team that overlooked the Marshall plan, the US investment plan to rejuvenate Western European economies after the Second World War. He played a central role in the post-world war development of the IMF and GATT organisations. He became a professor at Harvard Business School from 1959 to 1981 and continued his career at the John F. Kennedy School of Government.

The intent of his International Product Life Cycle model (IPLC) was to advance trade theory beyond David Ricardo's static framework of comparative advantages. In 1817, Ricardo came up with a simple economic experiment to explain the benefits to any country that was engaged in international trade even if it could produce all products at the lowest cost and would seem to have no need to trade with foreign partners. He showed that it was advantageous for a country with an absolute advantage in all product categories to trade and allow its work force to specialise in those categories with the highest added value. Vernon focused on the dynamics of comparative advantage and drew inspiration from the product life cycle to explain how trade patterns change over time.

His IPLC described an internationalisation process wherein a local manufacturer in an advanced country (Vernon regarded the United States of America as the principle source of inventions) begins selling a new, technologically advanced product to high-income consumers in its home market. Production capabilities build locally to stay in close contact with its clientele and to minimize risk and uncertainty. As demand from consumers in other markets rises, production increasingly shifts abroad enabling the firm to maximise economies of scale and to bypass trade barriers. As the product matures and becomes more of a commodity, the number of competitors increases. In the end, the innovator from the advanced nation becomes challenged in its own home market making the advanced nation a net importer of the product. This product is produced either by competitors in lesser developed countries or, if the innovator has developed into a multinational manufacturer, by its foreign based production facilities.

The IPLC international trade cycle consists of three stages:

a)NEWPRODUCT

The IPLC begins when a company in a developed country wants to exploit a technological breakthrough by launching a new, innovative product on its home market. Such a market is more likely to start in a developed nation because more high-income consumers are able to buy and are willing to experiment with new, expensive products (low price elasticity). Furthermore, easier access to capital markets exists to fund new product development. Production is also more likely to start locally in order to minimize risk and uncertainty: a location in which communication between the markets and the executives directly concerned with the new product is swift and easy, and in which a wide variety of potential types of input that might be needed by the production units are easily come by

Export to other industrial countries may occur at the end of this stage that allows the innovator to increase revenue and to increase the downward descent of the products experience curve. Other advanced nations have consumers with similar desires and incomes making exporting the easiest first step in an internationalisation effort. Competition comes from a few local or domestic players that produce their own unique product variations.

b)MATURINGPRODUCT

Exports to markets in advanced countries further increase through time making it economically possible and sometimes politically necessary to start local production. The products design and production process becomes increasingly stable. Foreign direct investments (FDI) in production plants drive down unit cost because labour cost and transportation cost decrease. Offshore production facilities are meant to serve local markets that substitute exports from the organisations home market. Production still requires high-skilled, high paid employees. Competition from local firms jump start in these non-domestic advanced markets. Export orders will begin to come from countries with lower incomes.

c)STANDARDISEDPRODUCT

During this phase, the principal markets become saturated. The innovator's original comparative advantage based on functional benefits has eroded. The firm begins to focus

on the reduction of process cost rather than the addition of new product features. As a result, the product and its production process become increasingly standardised. This enables further economies of scale and increases the mobility of manufacturing operations. Labour can start to be replaced by capital. If economies of scale are being fully exploited, the principal difference between any two locations is likely to be labour costs. To counter price competition and trade barriers or simply to meet local demand, production facilities will relocate to countries with lower incomes. As previously in advanced nations, local competitors will get access to first hand information and can start to copy and sell the product.

The demand of the original product in the domestic country dwindles from the arrival of new technologies, and other established markets will have become increasingly price-sensitive. Whatever market is left becomes shared between competitors who are predominately foreign. A MNC will internally maximize offshore production to low-wage countries since it can move capital and technology around, but not labour. As a result, the domestic market will have to import relatively capital intensive products from low income countries. The machines that operate these plants often remain in the country where the technology was first invented.

Unit 2

6. Write a note on the Historical Background and principles of GATT

Ans. Introduction:

The General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade, known as the GATT, is one-third of the Bretton Woods system that was created after World War II to ensure a stable trade and economic world environment. The International Monetary Fund (IMF) and World Bank are the other two bodies of the Bretton Woods system.

While often referred to as an international organization, the GATT had a “defacto” role as an international organization before the creation of the World Trade Organization (WTO). The WTO was established on January’ 1, 1995 by the Final Act of the Uruguay Round of negotiations.

History and Basic Information:

After World War II, the United Kingdom (UK) and the United States (US) submitted proposals to the Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC) of the United Nations regarding the establishment of an international trade body that was to be named the International Trade Organization (ITO). That is, perhaps, why the GATT is often referred to as a UN related body and its documents are sometimes mistakenly referred to as UN documents.

ECOSOC convened a conference, the United Nations Conference on Trade and Employment in 1946, to consider the UK and US proposals. A Preparatory Committee drafted the ITO Charter and it was approved in 1948 at the conference in Havana, Cuba. The Charter is often referred to as the Havana Charter or the ITO Charter.

The first round of trade negotiations took place while the Preparatory Committee was still working on drafting the Charter because the participants were anxious to begin the process of trade liberalization as soon as possible. Their results were incorporated into the General Agreement, which was signed in 1947.

Since the original signatory nations expected the agreement to become part of the more permanent ITO Charter, the text of the GATT contains very little “institutional” structure. This lack of detail within the agreement has created increasing difficulties as the GATT membership and rules governing trade between so many of the world’s nations have grown. The GATT has functioned as an international organization for many years even though it has never been formalized as such.

ECOSOC established an Interim Commission for the ITO that is referred to as ICITO. Unfortunately, when time came for the members to ratify the ITO Charter, the Congress of the United States refused and the ITO never became a reality.

The GATT survived, but remained intact only due to the Protocol of Provisional Application of the General Agreement of Tariffs and Trade which was concluded in 1947 and which came into force in 1948.

The GATT completed 8 rounds of multilateral trade negotiations (MTNs). The Uruguay Round (the 8th round) concluded with the signing of the Final Action April 15, 1994, in Morocco and produced the World Trade Organization (WTO) and its annexes.

The contracting party's means:

- i. When you see: CONTRACTING PARTIES in capital letters it is referring to the members acting jointly.
- ii. When you see: contracting parties in lower case letters, it is referring to individual member states.
- iii. When you see the words: Contracting Parties, they will be in press releases or in published works concerning the GATT.

The Basic Principles of the GATT:

a. Most-Favored-Nation (MFN) Treatment:

This is the fundamental principle of the GATT and it is not a coincidence that it appears in Article 1 of the GATT 1947. It states that each contracting party to the GATT is required to provide to all other contracting parties the same conditions of trade as the most favourable terms it extends to any one of them, i.e., each contracting party is required to treat all contracting parties in the same way that it treats its “most-favoured nation”.

b. Reciprocity:

GATT advocates the principles of “rights” and “obligations”. Each contracting party has a right, e.g. access to markets of other trading partners on a MFN basis but also an obligation to reciprocate with trade concessions on a MFN basis. In a way, this is closely associated with the MFN principle.

c. Transparency:

Fundamental to a transparent system of trade is the need to harmonize the system of import protection, so that barriers on trade can be reduced through the process of negotiations. The GATT therefore, limited the use of quotas, except in some specific sector such, as agriculture and advocated import regimes that are based on “tariff-only”.

In addition, the GATT and now the WTO, required many notifications from contracting parties on their agricultural and trade policies so that these can be examined by other parties to ensure that they are GATT/WTO compatible.

d. Tariff Binding and Reduction:

When GATT was established, tariffs were the main form of trade protection and negotiations in the early years focused primarily upon tariff binding and reduction. The text of the 1947, GATT lays out the obligations on the contracting parties in this regard.

7. What was the impact of Uruguay Round in International Trade Law?

Ans. THE URUGUAY ROUND

At times it seemed doomed to fail. But in the end, the Uruguay Round brought about the biggest reform of the world's trading system since GATT was created at the end of the Second World War. And yet, despite its troubled progress, the Uruguay Round did see some early results. Within only two years, participants had agreed on a package of cuts in import duties on tropical products — which are mainly exported by developing countries. They had also revised the rules for settling disputes, with some measures implemented on the spot. And they called for regular reports on GATT members' trade policies, a move considered important for making trade regimes transparent around the world.

A round to end all rounds?

The seeds of the Uruguay Round were sown in November 1982 at a ministerial meeting of GATT members in Geneva. Although the ministers intended to launch a major new negotiation, the conference stalled on agriculture and was widely regarded as a failure. In fact, the work programme that the ministers agreed formed the basis for what was to become the Uruguay Round negotiating agenda.

Nevertheless, it took four more years of exploring, clarifying issues and painstaking consensus-building, before ministers agreed to launch the new round. They did so in September 1986, in Punta del Este, Uruguay. They eventually accepted a negotiating agenda that covered virtually every outstanding trade policy issue. The talks were going to extend the trading system into several new areas, notably trade in services and intellectual property, and to reform trade in the sensitive sectors of agriculture and textiles. All the original GATT articles were up for review. It was the biggest negotiating mandate on trade ever agreed, and the ministers gave themselves four years to complete it.

Two years later, in December 1988, ministers met again in Montreal, Canada, for what was supposed to be an assessment of progress at the round's half-way point. The purpose was to clarify the agenda for the remaining two years, but the talks ended in a deadlock that was not resolved until officials met more quietly in Geneva the following April.

Despite the difficulty, during the Montreal meeting, ministers did agree a package of early results. These included some concessions on market access for tropical products — aimed at assisting developing countries — as well as a streamlined dispute settlement system, and the Trade Policy Review Mechanism which provided for the first comprehensive, systematic and regular reviews of national trade policies and practices of GATT members. The round was supposed to end when ministers met once more in Brussels, in December 1990. But they disagreed on how to reform agricultural trade and decided to extend the talks. The Uruguay Round entered its bleakest period.

Despite the poor political outlook, a considerable amount of technical work continued, leading to the first draft of a final legal agreement. This draft “Final Act” was compiled by the then GATT director-general, Arthur Dunkel, who chaired the negotiations at officials' level. It was put on the table in Geneva in December 1991. The text fulfilled every part of the Punta del Este mandate, with one exception — it did not contain the participating countries' lists of commitments for cutting import duties and opening their services markets. The draft became the basis for the final agreement.

Over the following two years, the negotiations lurched between impending failure, to predictions of imminent success. Several deadlines came and went. New points of major conflict emerged to join agriculture: services, market access, anti-dumping rules, and the proposed creation of a new institution. Differences between the United States and European Union became central to hopes for a final, successful conclusion.

In November 1992, the US and EU settled most of their differences on agriculture in a deal known informally as the “Blair House accord”. By July 1993 the “Quad” (US, EU, Japan and Canada) announced significant progress in negotiations on tariffs and related subjects (“market access”). It took until 15 December 1993 for every issue to be finally resolved and for negotiations on market access for goods and services to be concluded (although some final touches were completed in talks on market access a few weeks later). On 15 April 1994, the deal was signed by ministers from most of the 123 participating governments at a meeting in Marrakesh, Morocco.

The delay had some merits. It allowed some negotiations to progress further than would have been possible in 1990: for example some aspects of services and intellectual property, and the creation of the WTO itself. But the task had been immense, and negotiation-fatigue was felt in trade bureaucracies around the world. The difficulty of reaching agreement on a complete package containing almost the entire range of current trade issues led some to conclude that a negotiation on this scale would never again be possible. Yet, the Uruguay Round agreements contain timetables for new negotiations on a number of topics. And by 1996, some countries were openly calling for a new round early in the next century. The response was mixed; but the Marrakesh agreement did already include commitments to reopen negotiations on agriculture and services at the turn of the century. These began in early 2000 and were incorporated into the Doha Development Agenda in late 2001.

What happened to GATT?

The WTO replaced GATT as an international organization, but the General Agreement still exists as the WTO's umbrella treaty for trade in goods, updated as a result of the Uruguay Round negotiations. Trade lawyers distinguish between GATT 1994, the updated parts of GATT, and GATT 1947, the original agreement which is still the heart of GATT 1994. Confusing? For most of us, it's enough to refer simply to "GATT".

8. Discuss descriptively the Marrakesh Agreement.

Ans. The Agreement Establishing the World Trade Organization, commonly known as the "Marrakesh Agreement", was signed in Marrakesh, Morocco, on April 15, 1994, at the conclusion of the Uruguay Round of Multilateral Trade Negotiations.

This Agreement defines the scope, functions and structure of the World Trade Organization (WTO). The agreements previously negotiated under the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT), along with agreements concluded during the Uruguay Round, were incorporated as integral parts of the Marrakesh Agreement and are included in its Annexes. These agreements are now considered to be WTO agreements.

All WTO members are parties to the Marrakesh Agreement, including countries that have joined the WTO since it was signed.

This Agreement entered into force on January 1, 1995. It has no expiration date.

Who benefits from this Agreement?

While the Marrakesh Agreement itself does not apply directly to your company, the WTO agreements in its Annexes provide a comprehensive set of rules designed to make it easier to compete in today's global marketplace. Full texts of all WTO agreements, including those concluded since the WTO was established, can be found in the TARA database of the Trade Agreements Negotiation and Compliance of the U.S. Department of Commerce.

What are the main provisions of this Agreement?

The objective of the countries that signed the Marrakesh Agreement was to create an integrated multilateral trading system encompassing the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT) and the results of all the trade rounds (including the Uruguay Round) that had been conducted since the GATT was signed in 1947. The Marrakesh Agreement: established the WTO and states that it will serve as the basic framework for trade relations among all WTO member countries on matters covered by the WTO agreements; defines the functions of the WTO, which include: 1) reviewing the operation and implementation of all WTO agreements; 2) administering the WTO's dispute settlement process; 3) providing a forum for further trade negotiations; and 4) working with other international organizations (such as the World Bank and the International Monetary Fund) to achieve greater coherence in global economic policy-making; provides for the organizational and administrative structure of the WTO; requires the WTO to hold a Ministerial Conference at least once every two years, where trade ministers from WTO member countries meet to assess the implementation of the WTO agreements and decide on future WTO initiatives; established the WTO General Council, which oversees WTO operations between meetings of the Ministerial Conference; provides that decisions in the WTO are to be made as a general rule by consensus, although voting is allowed in certain circumstances where a decision cannot be reached by consensus; gives the Ministerial Conference and the General Council the exclusive authority to adopt interpretations of this Agreement and all WTO agreements, and also grants the Ministerial Conference the authority to amend all WTO agreements; states that any country may join the WTO on terms that are agreed upon between the country applying for membership and the WTO; maintains that WTO members may choose not to apply the WTO Agreements to a country that is joining the WTO as long as the Ministerial Conference is notified before

approving that country's accession terms, and permits any WTO member to withdraw from the WTO after giving six months advance notice to the WTO's Director-General.

9. How does the dispute settlement mechanism work under International Trade Law?

Ans. The Dispute Settlement Understanding of the World Trade Organization (WTO) establishes a set of rules and procedures and provides a forum for resolving trade disputes between WTO member countries. When disputes cannot be resolved, the Understanding authorizes the use of trade sanctions against the member country that has been found in violation of a WTO agreement.

All WTO members are parties to this Agreement.

This Agreement went into effect on January 1, 1995.

Who benefits from this Agreement?

Any company conducting international business who believes that another WTO member country is not complying with its obligations under a WTO Agreement can benefit from this Dispute Settlement Understanding.

Individual exporters cannot take their trade complaints directly to the World Trade Organization. They must work through their own governments.

How does the WTO dispute settlement process work?

Here, in more detail, is how the WTO dispute settlement process works:

First, the complaining party requests formal consultations with the other WTO member country (or countries) involved in the dispute. All such requests for formal consultations must be notified to the WTO's Dispute Settlement Body (DSB), which consists of representatives from all WTO member countries and administers the rules and procedures governing the dispute settlement process.

The consultation period can last up to 60 days. If the consultations fail to resolve the problem, the complaining party can then request that the DSB establish a panel of experts to adjudicate the merits of the case. Panelists are normally selected in consultation with

the parties to the dispute. If the parties cannot agree on panelists, the WTO will appoint them. The panel selection process can take up to 45 days.

The panel process in many ways resembles a typical court case. Both parties to the dispute submit written briefs and present oral arguments before the panel. After hearing arguments from both sides and after examining all the evidence, the panel makes its decision and prepares a draft report which is reviewed by both parties to the dispute, who are given an opportunity to comment on it. The panel then issues its final report, which includes its findings and recommendations. The final report should be issued, as a general rule, within six months of the start of the proceedings.

Parties to a dispute have the right to appeal a panel's decision. This appellate process must be completed within 90 days. Appeals are heard by a separate group of experts, who review issues of law covered in the panel report and then issue their own report with their own findings and recommendations. In all, it can take about 15 months to settle a dispute in the WTO.

A party that loses a case in the WTO is supposed to follow the recommendations of the panel report (or the appellate report if the case has been appealed), and it must also state whether it intends to follow the panel's recommendations at a meeting of the DSB. If the party found in violation of a WTO agreement cannot immediately comply with the panels' recommendations, it will be given a "reasonable period of time" to comply (usually no longer than 15 months).

If the losing party fails to comply with the panel's recommendations within the allotted time, it must enter into consultations with the winning party to seek agreement on compensation. Compensation may be granted in a variety of ways (e.g., tariff reductions or the lifting of quotas on certain products). If an agreement on compensation cannot be reached within 20 days of the expiration of the allotted time, then the DSB can authorize the winning party to apply equivalent trade sanctions (e.g., increased tariffs) against the losing party.

10. Write a note on difference between GATT and GATS.

Ans. General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade was established in 1947. In 1995, GATT was replaced by the World Trade Organisation (WTO). As far as the old system or GATT was concerned, there were two GATTs: GATT, the organisation, and GATT, the

agreement. The second one refers to the agreement between different governments setting out the rules for trade. GATT, the organisation, has been replaced by the establishment of the WTO. GATT, the agreement, however, exists along with the additional WTO new agreements, viz.

General Agreement on Trade in Services (GATS), and

It is, thus, clear that the WTO Agreements cover goods and services

The agreements establishing the WTO are

GATT

GATT is related to increasing market access by reducing various trade barriers operating in different countries. The dismantling of trade restrictions was to be achieved by the reduction in tariff rates, reductions in non-tariff support in agriculture, abolition of voluntary export restraints or phasing out the Multi-fibre Arrangement (MFA), cut in subsidies, etc.

To improve market access, industrialised countries will have to reduce tariffs by 36 percent over six years and 24 percent for developing nations over 10 years. World trade in textiles and clothing's is governed by the MFA which requires being phased out within 10 years (1993-2002).

On 1 January 2003, textiles and clothing sector will stand integrated into GATT, with the elimination of MFA restrictions. GATT aims at the elimination of farm support and export support in developed countries. The agreement says that all countries will have to reduce aggregate support levies if it is in excess of 5 percent of the total value of agricultural produce, but for developing countries, it is more than 10 percent. The value and the volume of direct export subsidies will have to be cut by 36 percent and 21 percent., respectively, over six years for developed countries.

GATS

Multilaterally agreed and legally enforceable rules and disciplines relating to trade in services are covered by General Agreement on Trade in Services. It envisages free trade in services, like banking, insurance, hotels, construction, etc., so as to promote growth in

the developed countries by providing larger markets and in the developing countries through the transfer of technologies from the developed countries. GATS is more comprehensive in coverage than GATT. Trade in services is defined as covering more than a cross-border exchange of a service and includes also consumer movements and factor flows (Investment and labor).

As a result of this agreement, access of service personnel into markets of member countries will henceforth be possible on a non-discriminatory basis under the transparent and rule-based system. Under the agreement, service sector would be placed under most favored nation (MFN) obligations that prevent countries from discriminating among different nations in respect of services.

UNIT 3

11. Write an essay on Agreement on Agriculture (WTO).

Ans. The Agreement on Agriculture (AoA) is an international treaty of the World Trade Organization. It was negotiated during the Uruguay Round of the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade, and entered into force with the establishment of the WTO on January 1, 1995. The idea of replacing agricultural price support with direct payments to farmers decoupled from production dates back to the late 1950s, when the twelfth session of the GATT Contracting Parties selected a Panel of Experts chaired by Gottfried Haberler to examine the effect of agricultural protectionism, fluctuating commodity prices and the failure of export earnings to keep pace with import demand in developing countries.

The 1958 Haberler Report stressed the importance of minimising the effect of agriculture subsidies on competitiveness and recommended replacing price support with direct supplementary payments not linked with production, anticipating discussion on green box subsidies. Only more recently, though, has this shift become the core of the reform of the global agricultural system.

The Agreement on Agriculture constitutes of three pillars—domestic support, market access, and export subsidies.

Domestic support

The first pillar of the Agreement on Agriculture is "domestic support". AoA divides domestic support into two categories: trade-distorting and non-trade-distorting (or minimally trade-distorting). The WTO Agreement on Agriculture negotiated in the Uruguay Round (1986–1994) includes the classification of subsidies by "boxes" depending on consequences of production and trade: amber (most directly linked to production levels), blue (production-limiting programmes that still distort trade), and green (minimal distortion). While payments in the amber box had to be reduced, those in the green box were exempt from reduction commitments. Detailed rules for green box payments are set out in Annex 2 of the AoA. However, all must comply with the "fundamental requirement" in paragraph 1, to cause not more than minimal distortion of trade or production, and must be provided through a government-funded programme that does not involve transfers from consumers or price support to producers.

The Agreement on Agriculture's domestic support system currently allows Europe and the United States to spend \$380 billion a year on agricultural subsidies. The World Bank dismissed the EU and the United States' argument that small farmers needed protection, noting that more than half of the EU's Common Agricultural Policy subsidies go to 1% of producers while in the United States 70% of subsidies go to 10% of its producers, mainly agribusinesses. These subsidies end up flooding global markets with below-cost commodities, depressing prices, and undercutting producers in poor countries, a practice known as dumping.

Market access

Market access refers to the reduction of tariff (or non-tariff) barriers to trade by WTO members. The 1995 Agreement on Agriculture consists of tariff reductions of:

36% average reduction - developed countries - with a minimum of 15% per-tariff line reduction in next six years.

24% average reduction - developing countries - with a minimum of 10% per-tariff line reduction in next ten years.

Least developed countries (LDCs) were exempt from tariff reductions, but they either had to convert non-tariff barriers to tariffs—a process called tariffication—or "bind" their tariffs, creating a ceiling that could not be increased in future.

Export subsidies

Export subsidies are the third pillar. The 1995 Agreement on Agriculture required developed countries to reduce export subsidies by at least 36% (by value) or by 21% (by volume) over six years. For developing countries, the agreement required cuts were 14% (by volume) and 24% (by value) over ten years.

12. Write a descriptive note on Agreement on Subsidies and Countervailing Measures (WTO)

Ans. The Agreement on Subsidies and Countervailing Measures (“SCM Agreement”) addresses two separate but closely related topics: multilateral disciplines regulating the provision of subsidies, and the use of countervailing measures to offset injury caused by subsidized imports. Multilateral disciplines are the rules regarding whether or not a subsidy may be provided by a Member. They are enforced through invocation of the WTO dispute settlement mechanism. Countervailing duties are a unilateral instrument, which may be applied by a Member after an investigation by that Member and a determination that the criteria set forth in the SCM Agreement are satisfied.

Part I of the Agreement defines the coverage of the Agreement. Specifically, it establishes a definition of the term “subsidy” and an explanation of the concept of “specificity”. Only a measure which is a “specific subsidy” within the meaning of Part I is subject to multilateral disciplines and can be subject to countervailing measures.

Definition of subsidy Unlike the Tokyo Round Subsidies Code, the WTO SCM Agreement contains a definition of the term “subsidy”. The definition contains three basic elements: (i) a financial contribution (ii) by a government or any public body within the territory of a Member (iii) which confers a benefit. All three of these elements must be satisfied in order for a subsidy to exist.

The concept of “financial contribution” was included in the SCM Agreement only after a protracted negotiation. Some Members argued that there could be no subsidy unless there was a charge on the public account. Other Members considered that forms of government intervention that did not involve an expense to the government nevertheless distorted competition and should thus be considered to be subsidies. The SCM Agreement basically adopted the former approach. The Agreement requires a financial contribution and contains a list of the types of measures that represent a financial contribution, e.g.,

grants, loans, equity infusions, loan guarantees, fiscal incentives, the provision of goods or services, the purchase of goods.

In order for a financial contribution to be a subsidy, it must be made by or at the direction of a government or any public body within the territory of a Member. Thus, the SCM Agreement applies not only to measures of national governments, but also to measures of sub-national governments and of such public bodies as state-owned companies.

A financial contribution by a government is not a subsidy unless it confers a “benefit.” In many cases, as in the case of a cash grant, the existence of a benefit and its valuation will be clear. In some cases, however, the issue of benefit will be more complex. For example, when does a loan, an equity infusion or the purchase by a government of a good confer a benefit? Although the SCM Agreement does not provide complete guidance on these issues, the Appellate Body has ruled (Canada – Aircraft) that the existence of a benefit is to be determined by comparison with the market-place (i.e., on the basis of what the recipient could have received in the market). In the context of countervailing duties, Article 14 of the SCM Agreement provides some guidance with respect to determining whether certain types of measures confer a benefit. In the context of multilateral disciplines, however, the issue of the meaning of “benefit” is not fully resolved.

Specificity. Assuming that a measure is a subsidy within the meaning of the SCM Agreement, it nevertheless is not subject to the SCM Agreement unless it has been specifically provided to an enterprise or industry or group of enterprises or industries. The basic principle is that a subsidy that distorts the allocation of resources within an economy should be subject to discipline. Where a subsidy is widely available within an economy, such a distortion in the allocation of resources is presumed not to occur. Thus, only “specific” subsidies are subject to the SCM Agreement disciplines. There are four types of “specificity” within the meaning of the SCM Agreement:

- **Enterprise-specificity.** A government targets a particular company or companies for subsidization;
- **Industry-specificity.** A government targets a particular sector or sectors for subsidization.
- **Regional specificity.** A government targets producers in specified parts of its territory for subsidization.

- Prohibited subsidies. A government targets export goods or goods using domestic inputs for subsidization.

13. What are the Countervailing Measures under Agreement on Subsidies and Countervailing Measures?

Ans. the SCM Agreement sets forth certain substantive requirements that must be fulfilled in order to impose a countervailing measure, as well as in-depth procedural requirements regarding the conduct of a countervailing investigation and the imposition and maintenance in place of countervailing measures. A failure to respect either the substantive or procedural requirements of Part V can be taken to dispute settlement and may be the basis for invalidation of the measure.

Substantive rules A Member may not impose a countervailing measure unless it determines that there are subsidized imports, injury to a domestic industry, and a causal link between the subsidized imports and the injury. As previously noted, the existence of a specific subsidy must be determined in accordance with the criteria in Part I of the Agreement. However, the criteria regarding injury and causation are found in Part V. One significant development of the new SCM Agreement in this area is the explicit authorization of cumulation of the effects of subsidized imports from more than one Member where specified criteria are fulfilled. In addition, Part V contains rules regarding the determination of the existence and amount of a benefit.

Procedural rules Part V of the SCM Agreement contains detailed rules regarding the initiation and conduct of countervailing investigations, the imposition of preliminary and final measures, the use of undertakings, and the duration of measures. A key objective of these rules is to ensure that investigations are conducted in a transparent manner, that all interested parties have a full opportunity to defend their interests, and that investigating authorities adequately explain the bases for their determinations. A few of the more important innovations in the WTO SCM Agreement are identified below:

- **Standing.** The Agreement defines in numeric terms the circumstances under which there is sufficient support from a domestic industry to justify initiation of an investigation.
- **Preliminary investigation.** The Agreement ensures the conduct of a preliminary investigation before a preliminary measure can be imposed.

- **Undertakings.** The Agreement places limitations on the use of undertakings to settle CVD investigations, in order to avoid Voluntary Restraint Agreements or similar measures masquerading as undertakings
- **Sunset.** The Agreement requires that a countervailing measure be terminated after five years unless it is determined that continuation of the measure is necessary to avoid the continuation or recurrence of subsidization and injury.
- **Judicial review.** The Agreement requires that Members create an independent tribunal to review the consistency of determinations of the investigating authority with domestic law.

14. What do you understand by Dumping Under GATT/WTO?

Ans. Dumping is, in general, a situation of international price discrimination, where the price of a product when sold in the importing country is less than the price of that product in the market of the exporting country. Thus, in the simplest of cases, one identifies dumping simply by comparing prices in two markets. However, the situation is rarely, if ever, that simple, and in most cases it is necessary to undertake a series of complex analytical steps in order to determine the appropriate price in the market of the exporting country (known as the “normal value”) and the appropriate price in the market of the importing country (known as the “export price”) so as to be able to undertake an appropriate comparison.

Article VI of GATT and the Anti-Dumping Agreement

The GATT 1994 sets forth a number of basic principles applicable in trade between Members of the WTO, including the “most favoured nation” principle. It also requires that imported products not be subject to internal taxes or other changes in excess of those imposed on domestic goods, and that imported goods in other respects be accorded treatment no less favourable than domestic goods under domestic laws and regulations, and establishes rules regarding quantitative restrictions, fees and formalities related to importation, and customs valuation. Members of the WTO also agreed to the establishment of schedules of bound tariff rates. Article VI of GATT 1994, on the other hand, explicitly authorizes the imposition of a specific anti-dumping duty on imports from a particular source, in excess of bound rates, in cases where dumping causes or threatens injury to a domestic industry, or materially retards the establishment of a

domestic

industry.

The Agreement on Implementation of Article VI of GATT 1994, commonly known as the Anti-Dumping Agreement, provides further elaboration on the basic principles set forth in Article VI itself, to govern the investigation, determination, and application, of anti-dumping duties.

Determination of dumping

Determination of normal value

General rule

The normal value is generally the price of the product at issue, in the ordinary course of trade, when destined for consumption in the exporting country market. In certain circumstances, for example when there are no sales in the domestic market, it may not be possible to determine normal value on this basis. The Agreement provides alternative methods for the determination of normal value in such cases.

Sales in the ordinary course of trade

One of the most complicated questions in anti-dumping investigations is the determination whether sales in the exporting country market are made in the “ordinary course of trade” or not. One of the bases on which countries may determine that sales are not made in the ordinary course of trade is if sales in the domestic market of the exporter are made below cost. The Agreement defines the specific circumstances in which home market sales at prices below the cost of production may be considered as not made in the ordinary course of trade", and thus may be disregarded in the determination of normal value (Article 2). Those sales must be made at prices that are below per unit fixed and variable costs plus administrative, selling and general costs, they must be made within an extended period of time (normally one year, but in no case less than six months), and they must be made in substantial quantities. Sales are made in substantial quantities when (a) the weighted average selling price is below the weighted average cost; or (b) 20% of the sales by volume were below cost. Finally, sales made below costs may only be disregarded in the determination of normal value where they do not allow for recovery of costs within a reasonable period of time. If sales are below cost when made but are above

the weighted average cost over the period of the investigation, the Agreement provides that they allow for recovery of costs within a reasonable period of time.

Insufficient volume of sales

If there are sales below cost that meet the criteria set out in the Agreement, they can simply be ignored in the calculation of normal value, and normal value will be determined based on the remaining sales. However, exclusion of these below-cost sales may result in a level of sales insufficient to determine normal value based on home market prices. It is obvious that, in the case where there are no sales in the exporting country of the product under investigation, it is not possible to base normal value on such sales, and the Agreement recognizes this. However, it is also possible that, while there are some sales in the exporting country's market, the level of such sales is so low that its significance is questionable. Thus, the Agreement recognizes that in some cases sales in the home market may be so low in volume that they do not permit a proper comparison of home market and export prices. It provides that the level of home market sales is sufficient if home market sales constitute 5 per cent or more of the export sales in the country conducting the investigation, provided that a lower ratio “should” be accepted if the volume of domestic sales nevertheless is “of sufficient magnitude” to provide for a fair comparison.

Alternative bases for calculating normal value

Two alternatives are provided for the determination of normal value if sales in the exporting country market are not an appropriate basis. These are (a) the price at which the product is sold to a third country; and

(b) the “constructed value” of the product, which is calculated on the basis of the cost of production, plus selling, general, and administrative expenses, and profits. The Agreement contains detailed and specific rules for the determination of a constructed value, governing the information to be used in determining the amounts for costs, expenses, and profits, the allocation of these elements of constructed value to the specific product in question, and adjustments for particular situations such as start-up costs and non-recurring cost items.

Constructed normal value

The determination of normal value based on cost of production, selling, general and administrative expenses, and profits is referred to as the “constructed normal value” The rules for determining whether sales are made below cost also apply to performing a constructed normal value calculation. The principal difference is the inclusion of a “reasonable amount for profits” in the constructed value.

Third country price as normal value

The other alternative method for determining normal value is to look at the comparable price of the like product when exported to an appropriate third country, provided that price is representative. The Agreement does not specify any criteria for determining what third country is appropriate.

15. Write a detailed essay on GATS.

Ans. The creation of the GATS was one of the landmark achievements of the Uruguay Round, whose results entered into force in January 1995. The GATS was inspired by essentially the same objectives as its counterpart in merchandise trade, the General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (GATT): creating a credible and reliable system of international trade rules; ensuring fair and equitable treatment of all participants (principle of non-discrimination); stimulating economic activity through guaranteed policy bindings; and promoting trade and development through progressive liberalization.

While services currently account for over two-thirds of global production and employment, they represent no more than 25 per cent of total trade, when measured on a balance-of-payments basis. This — seemingly modest — share should not be underestimated, however. Indeed, balance-of-payments statistics do not capture one of the modes of service supply defined in the GATS, which is the supply through commercial presence in another country (mode 3). Furthermore, even though services are increasingly traded in their own right, they also serve as crucial inputs into the production of goods and, consequently, when assessed in value-added terms, services account for about 50 per cent of world trade. All WTO members are at the same time members of the GATS and, to varying degrees, have assumed commitments in individual service sectors.

The GATS applies in principle to all service sectors, with two exceptions.

Article I (3) of the GATS excludes “services supplied in the exercise of governmental authority”. These are services that are supplied neither on a commercial basis nor in competition with other suppliers. Cases in point are social security schemes and any other public service, such as health or education, that is provided at non-market conditions. Furthermore, the Annex on Air Transport Services exempts from coverage measures affecting air traffic rights and services directly related to the exercise of such rights.

The supply of many services often involves the simultaneous physical presence of both producer and consumer. There are thus many instances in which, in order to be commercially meaningful, trade commitments must extend to cross-border movements of the consumer, the establishment of a commercial presence within a market, or the temporary movement of the service provider.

The GATS distinguishes between four modes of supplying services: cross-border trade, consumption abroad, commercial presence, and presence of natural persons.

Cross-border supply is defined to cover services flows from the territory of one member into the territory of another member (e.g. banking or architectural services transmitted via telecommunications or mail);

Consumption abroad refers to situations where a service consumer (e.g. tourist or patient) moves into another member's territory to obtain a service;

Commercial presence implies that a service supplier of one member establishes a territorial presence, including through ownership or lease of premises, in another member's territory to provide a service (e.g. domestic subsidiaries of foreign insurance companies or hotel chains); and

Presence of natural persons consists of persons of one member entering the territory of another member to supply a service (e.g. accountants, doctors or teachers). The Annex on Movement of Natural Persons specifies, however, that members remain free to operate measures regarding citizenship, residence or access to the employment market on a permanent basis.

UNIT 4

16. Write a note on Trade and Environment.

Ans. Sustainable development and protection and preservation of the environment are fundamental goals of the WTO. They are enshrined in the Marrakesh Agreement, which established the WTO, and complement the WTO's objective to reduce trade barriers and eliminate discriminatory treatment in international trade relations. While there is no specific agreement dealing with the environment, under WTO rules members can adopt trade-related measures aimed at protecting the environment provided a number of conditions to avoid the misuse of such measures for protectionist ends are fulfilled.

The WTO contributes to protection and preservation of the environment through its objective of trade openness, through its rules and enforcement mechanism, through work in different WTO bodies, and through ongoing efforts under the Doha Development Agenda. The Doha Agenda includes specific negotiations on trade and environment and some tasks assigned to the regular Trade and Environment Committee.

Allowing for the optimal use of the world's resources in accordance with the objective of sustainable development and seeking to protect and preserve the environment are fundamental to the WTO. These goals, enshrined in the Preamble of the Marrakesh Agreement, go hand in hand with the WTO's objective to reduce trade barriers and eliminate discriminatory treatment in international trade relations. For WTO members, the aims of upholding and safeguarding an open and non-discriminatory multilateral trading system, on the one hand, and acting for the protection of the environment and the promotion of sustainable development, on the other, can and must be mutually supportive.

An important element of the WTO's contribution to sustainable development and protection of the environment comes in the form of furthering trade opening in goods and services to promote economic development, and by providing stable and predictable conditions that enhance the possibility of innovation. This promotes the efficient allocation of resources, economic growth and increased income levels that in turn provide additional possibilities for protecting the environment. The importance of trade's contribution to efforts on sustainable development and the environment has been recognized in such forums as the 1992 Rio Summit, 2002 Johannesburg Summit and 2005 UN World Summit.

Under WTO rules, members can adopt trade-related measures aimed at protecting the environment. The commitment of WTO members to sustainable development and the

environment can also be seen in WTO rules. In general terms the rules, with their fundamental principles of non-discrimination, transparency and predictability, help set the framework for members to design and implement measures to address environmental concerns. Moreover, WTO rules, including specialized agreements such as the Agreement on Technical Barriers to Trade (which deals with product regulations), and the Agreement on Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measures (which concerns food safety and animal and plant health), provide scope for environmental objectives to be followed and for necessary trade-related measures to be adopted. WTO rules set up the appropriate balance between the right of members to take regulatory measures, including trade restrictions, to achieve legitimate policy objectives (e.g., protection of human, animal or plant life or health, and natural resources) and the rights of other members under basic trade disciplines. For example, GATT Article XX on General Exceptions lays out a number of specific instances in which members may be exempted from GATT rules. The provision seeks, among other things, to ensure that environmental measures are not applied arbitrarily and are not used as disguised protectionism.

17. Write an essay on The Doha Round.

Ans. The Doha Round is the latest round of trade negotiations among the WTO membership. Its aim is to achieve major reform of the international trading system through the introduction of lower trade barriers and revised trade rules. The work programme covers about 20 areas of trade. The Round is also known semi-officially as the Doha Development Agenda as a fundamental objective is to improve the trading prospects of developing countries. The Round was officially launched at the WTO's Fourth Ministerial Conference in Doha, Qatar, in November 2001. The Doha Ministerial Declaration provided the mandate for the negotiations, including on agriculture, services and an intellectual property topic, which began earlier. In Doha, ministers also approved a decision on how to address the problems developing countries face in implementing the current WTO agreements. The WTO's work is to help trade flow more smoothly and predictably, for the benefit of all. The work is two-pronged: lowering trade barriers where they can be lowered, and writing rules for maintaining trade barriers and for other trade policies. Both are the result of rounds of negotiations among governments since the 1940s.

The Doha Round continues that tradition. It's the ninth round since the Second World War and the first since the WTO inherited the multilateral trading system in 1995. It aims to produce the first major overhaul of the system in the 21st Century.

All WTO member governments, currently 157 participate. The talks are complex, with a broad array of subjects, and widely differing interests, even within countries. Binding the complexity together are two key principles: decisions are by consensus, which means everyone has to be persuaded before any deal can be struck, and “nothing is agreed until everything is agreed”, sometimes called the “single undertaking”

Achievements of the Doha Round

The achievements of the negotiations are reflected in two ways:

Agreed texts (the “acquis”, what has been acquired) the 2001 Doha Declaration set the broad objectives; the 2004 Frameworks narrowed down differences in interpreting the broad objectives and defined the shape of the final agreements, particularly in agriculture and non-agricultural market access; the 2005 Hong Kong Declaration narrowed the gaps further.

Chairs' drafts, although these have not been agreed, they drew on members' inputs in numerous meetings, and in many cases contain a considerable amount of detail now described as “stable”. This means much of these texts is almost agreed. A small number of issues still need to be resolved, but they are politically difficult, which is why they are still unsettled. This is particularly true of the latest (December 2008) drafts in agriculture and non-agricultural market access.

Subjects of Doha Agreement

Agriculture

The aim: More market access, eliminating export subsidies, reducing distorting domestic support, sorting out a range of developing country issues, and dealing with non-trade concerns such as food security and rural development.

Non-agricultural market access (NAMA)

The aim: “To reduce or as appropriate eliminate tariffs, including the reduction or elimination of high tariffs, tariff peaks and tariff escalation (higher tariffs protecting

processing, lower tariffs on raw materials) as well as non-tariff barriers, in particular on products of export interest to developing countries”.

Services

The aim: To improve market access and to strengthen the rules. Each government has the right to decide which sectors it wants to open to foreign companies and to what extent, including any restrictions on foreign ownership. Unlike in agriculture and NAMA, the services negotiations are not based on a “modalities” text. They are being conducted essentially on two tracks:

bilateral and/or plurilateral (involving only some WTO members) negotiations

multilateral negotiations among all WTO members to establish any necessary rules and disciplines

Trade facilitation

The aim: To ease customs procedures and to facilitate the movement, release and clearance of goods. This is an important addition to the overall negotiation since it would cut bureaucracy and corruption in customs procedures and would speed up trade and make it cheaper.

Rules

These cover anti-dumping, subsidies and countervailing measures, fisheries subsidies, and regional trade agreements.

The aim: “Clarifying and improving disciplines” under the Anti-Dumping and Subsidies agreements; and to “clarify and improve WTO disciplines on fisheries subsidies, taking into account the importance of this sector to developing countries.

The environment

These are the first significant negotiations on trade and the environment in the GATT/ WTO. They have two key components:

Freer trade in environmental goods. Products that WTO members have proposed include: wind turbines, carbon capture and storage technologies, solar panels.

Environmental agreements. Improving collaboration with the secretariats of multilateral environmental agreements and establishing more coherence between trade and environmental rules.

Geographical indications: multilateral register for wines and spirits

This is the only intellectual property issue that is definitely part of the Doha negotiations. The objective is to “facilitate” the protection of wines and spirits in participating countries. The talks began in 1997 and were built into the Doha Round in 2001.

Some members want negotiations on two other subjects and to link these to the register for wines and spirits. Other members disagree. These two topics are discussed in consultations chaired by the WTO Director-General (sometimes a deputy):

GI “extension”. Extending the higher level of protection for geographical indications beyond wines and spirits

Biopiracy, benefit sharing and traditional knowledge

Dispute settlement

Aim: To improve and clarify the Dispute Settlement Understanding, the WTO agreement dealing with legal disputes. These negotiations take place in special sessions of the Dispute Settlement Body (DSB). Exceptionally, they are not part of the “single undertaking” of the Doha Round.

18. Provide a detailed note on SAPTA.

Ans. The Agreement on SAARC Preferential Trading Arrangement (SAPTA) which envisages the creation of a Preferential Trading Area among the seven member states of the SAARC, namely Bangladesh, Bhutan, India, Maldives, Nepal, Pakistan and Sri Lanka was signed in Dhaka in April 1993. The idea of liberalizing trade among SAARC countries was first mooted by Sri Lanka at the sixth Summit of the South Asian Association for Regional Co-operation (SAARC) held in Colombo in December 1991. It was agreed that SAPTA is a stepping stone to higher levels of trade liberalization and economic co-operation among the SAARC member countries.

Objective

The objective of the SAPTA is to promote and sustain mutual trade and the economic co-operation among the member states through exchange of trade concessions. SAPTA therefore is the first step towards higher levels of trade and economic co-operation in the region.

The basic principles

- Overall reciprocity and mutuality of advantages
- Step by step negotiations and periodic reviews so as to improve and extend the preferential trade arrangement, in stages
- Inclusion of all products, manufactures and commodities in their raw semi- processes and processed forms
- Special and favourable treatment to Least Developed Contacting States

Main components

- Tariff
- Para Tariff
- Non Tariff

Direct Trade Measures

SAPTA specified four negotiating approaches namely, product by product basis, across the board tariff reduction, sectoral basis and direct trade measures. However it was agreed that tariff concessions would initially be negotiated on a product - by- product basis. The agreement also provides for negotiation of tariff concessions to be an ongoing process. The SAPTA envisages that concessions on tariff para-tariff and non tariff measures will be negotiated step -by step improved and extended in successive stages.

National Schedules of Concessions

The process of negotiation on the schedule of concession, which forms an integral part of the Agreement, commenced in 1993. For this purpose, the Inter Governmental Group on Trade Liberalization (IGG) was set up. The IGG met on six occasions in various capitals. At the sixth meeting held in Katmandu on 20 th and 21 st April 1995, the delegations held intensive rounds of bilateral and multilateral negotiations and agreed on the National

Schedule of concessions to be granted by individual member states to other member states under the SAPTA Agreement.

Four rounds of trade negotiations were concluded under SAPTA covering over 5000 commodities. Each Round contributed to an incremental trend in the product coverage and the deepening of tariff concessions over previous Rounds. During the first and the second rounds, trade negotiations were conducted on a product by product basis. In the third and the fourth rounds, negotiations were conducted on chapter wise.

Maintenance of SAPTA Concession

The Agreement on the South Asian Free Trade Area (SAFTA) which was implemented with effect from 1st January 2006 will supercede the SAARC Preferential Trading Arrangement (SAPTA). On the issue of maintaining SAPTA concessions for LDCs, the Committee agreed that once the Non-LDCs member states complete the Trade Liberalization Programme (TLP) for LDC member states, SAPTA concessions would cease for LDC member states. However, if any item on which SAPTA concessions are available to LDC, appear in the sensitive lists of non-LDC, they shall maintain the same level of concession through derogation. The Committee has further agreed that if the items under TLP enjoy tariff preferences under SAPTA, the Non-LDCs shall reduce their tariff on those items to a rate not higher than the rate applicable for LDCs under SAPTA on the date agreed for base rate for TLP. It was also agreed at the first SAFTA Ministerial Council Meeting held in April that LDCs should also maintain concessions under SAPTA for Non LDCs until the completion of TLP irrespective of whether the products are in the sensitive lists or not.

19. Write an essay on SAFTA

Ans. The South Asian Free Trade Area (SAFTA) is an agreement reached on January 6, 2004, at the 12th SAARC summit in Islamabad, Pakistan. It created a free trade area of 1.6 billion people in Afghanistan, Bangladesh, Bhutan, India, Maldives, Nepal, Pakistan and Sri Lanka to reduce customs duties of all traded goods to zero by the year 2016. The SAFTA agreement came into force on January 1, 2006, and is operational following the ratification of the agreement by the seven governments. SAFTA required the developing countries in South Asia (India, Pakistan and Sri Lanka) to bring their duties down to 20 percent in the first phase of the two-year period ending in 2007. In the final five-year

phase ending in 2012, the 20 percent duty was reduced to zero in a series of annual cuts. The least developed nations in South Asia (Nepal, Bhutan, Bangladesh, Afghanistan and Maldives) had an additional three years to reduce tariffs to zero. India and Pakistan ratified the treaty in 2009, whereas Afghanistan as the 8th member state of the SAARC ratified the SAFTA protocol on 4 May 2011.

The purpose of SAFTA is to encourage and elevate common contract among the countries such as medium and long term contracts. Contracts involving trade operated by states, supply and import assurance in respect of specific products etc. It involves agreement on tariff concession like national duties concession and non-tariff concession. The main objective of the agreement is to promote competition in the area and to provide equitable benefits to the countries involved. It aims to benefit the people of the countries by bringing transparency and integrity among the nations. SAFTA was also formed in order to increase the level of trade and economic cooperation among the SAARC nations by reducing the tariff and barriers and also to provide special preference to the Least Developed Countries (LDCs) among the SAARC nations to establish framework for further regional cooperation.

SAFTA recognizes the need for special and differential treatment for LDCs in its preamble. This has been translated in the following measures

Market access: LDCs benefit from smaller sensitive lists in some of the SAFTA members (meaning that they have DFQF access in a larger number of products) and less stringent rules of origin (requirement of change of tariff heading and value addition of 10% less than the general requirement for non-LDCs; the general rule is 60% and there are some product-specific rules

Others:

- LDCs were allowed smaller initial tariff reduction and longer implementation periods under trade liberalization programmes;
- LDCs can have a longer list of sensitive products exempted from liberalization commitments than non-LDC signatories;
- LDCs were granted greater flexibility in the continuation of quantitative or other restrictions;

- There is a commitment of contracting states to give, until the trade liberalization programme has been completed by all Contracting States, special regard to the situation of LDCs when considering the application of anti-dumping and/or countervailing measures, providing an opportunity for consultations and favourably considering accepting price undertakings offered by exporters from LDCs;
- The agreement contains a rule whereby safeguard measures are not to be applied against products originating in LDC contracting states, “as long as its share of imports of the product concerned in the importing Contracting State does not exceed 5 per cent, provided Least Developed Contracting States with less than 5 per cent import share collectively account for not more than 15 per cent of total imports of the product concerned”;
- There is also a commitment to consider taking direct trade measures with a view to enhancing sustainable exports from LDC contracting states, such as long and medium-term contracts containing import and supply commitments in respect of specific products, buy-back arrangements, state trading operations, and government and public procurement;
- LDCs were to be given special consideration in requests for technical assistance and cooperation arrangements designed to assist them in expanding their trade with other Contracting States and in taking advantage of the potential benefits of SAFTA;
- A mechanism to compensate LDCs for their loss of tariff revenue upon liberalization is contained in Article 11 of the Agreement but was not implemented.

20. What is the relation between Environment and Doha Agreement?

Ans. The current Doha Round of negotiations gives members a chance to achieve an even more efficient allocation of resources on a global scale through the continued reduction of obstacles to trade. The Round is also an opportunity to pursue win-win-win results for trade, development and the environment. For example, the Doha Round is the first time environmental issues have featured explicitly in the context of a multilateral trade negotiation and the overarching objective is to enhance the mutual supportiveness of trade and environment. Members are working to liberalize trade in goods and services that can benefit the environment. They are also discussing ways to maintain a harmonious co-

existence between WTO rules and the specific trade obligations in various agreements that have been negotiated multilaterally to protect the environment. Other parts of the Doha negotiations are also relevant to the environment, for example aspects of the agriculture negotiations and also disciplines on fisheries subsidies. The Doha Development Agenda also has a section specifying the priority items in the CTE's regular work.

The 2001 Doha Ministerial Declaration asks the regular Trade and Environment Committee to focus on a number of items in its work programme — work that is separate from the new negotiations on trade and environment that the declaration also launched.

There are areas which are taken into consideration and they are: -

Environmental requirements and market access: preventing 'green protectionism'

Environmental requirements can impede trade and even be used as an excuse for protectionism. The answer is not to weaken environmental standards, but to set appropriate standards and enable exporters to meet them. The Trade and Environment Committee gives particular attention to this subject and its effects on developing countries. The effect of environmental measures on market access, especially for developing countries and in particular to the least developed among them, is one of the items on the committee's work programme. This was established in the 1994 Ministerial Decision on Trade and Environment. In 2001, the Doha Ministerial Declaration instructed the Committee to give particular attention to this subject. The effect of environmental measures on market access is particularly important to the work of the Trade and Environment Committee because it holds the key to ensure that sound trade and environmental policies work together.

WTO member governments consider that the protection of the environment and health are legitimate policy objectives. But they also acknowledge that measures designed to meet these objectives could hinder exports. And they agree that sustainable development depends on improved market access for developing countries' products. Environmental standards, objectives and priorities do need to reflect the particular environmental and developmental context to which they apply — so says Principle 11 of the 1992 Rio Declaration on Environment and Development. In other words, environmental standards applied by some countries could be inappropriate. They could cause unwarranted

economic and social cost to others, particularly developing countries, by hindering exports. Small and medium sized enterprises (SMEs) are especially vulnerable.

The answer is not to weaken environmental standards, but to enable exporters to meet them. WTO agreements do have enough scope to ensure that environmental measures do not unduly restrict exports. Examples include the Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measures (SPS) Agreement — which deals with food safety and animal and plant health — and the Technical Barriers to Trade (TBT) Agreement — which deals with product standards and labelling.

Win-win-win situations

WTO Members recognized very early on in the CTE that one of the principal ways in which the WTO could contribute to environmental protection would be through the removal of environmentally harmful trade distortions. In this context, the CTE took up the issue of fisheries subsidies, which after a number of years culminated in the launch of negotiations, as part of the DDA, to “clarify and improve” the WTO rules concerning such subsidies. The demand for the negotiating mandate arose from the conjunction of a high level of subsidization of the sector (estimated at up to 20 per cent of total sectoral revenues), and the depletion of many world fish stocks (with FAO estimating that 75 per cent of world fish stocks are fully — or over —exploited)

Demandeurs argue that subsidization has contributed to structural overcapacity in the sector, as well as overfishing, by reducing the cost of fishing, with the result that too many boats are chasing too few fish. Other participants in the negotiation counter that the factor that determines whether subsidization contributes to overcapacity and overfishing is the adequacy of the fisheries management system that is in place. Ministers at Hong Kong, noting broad agreement among participants to strengthen disciplines, including through a prohibition of certain subsidies contributing to overcapacity and overfishing, called on the participants to intensify their work in this area, taking into account the importance of the fisheries sector to developing Members. Proposals under consideration range from a broad ban of most subsidies to the fisheries sector (including certain downstream activities), subject to specified exceptions; to prohibition of certain listed subsidies, if those subsidies do not meet specified conditions as to management and capacity parameters; and other proposals in between. Within the various proposed general frameworks, participants are discussing a variety of proposals for special and differential

treatment for developing Members. In their analysis of the proposals on the table, participants are taking up a number of technical issues related to enforcement of the proposed disciplines, including transparency, surveillance and dispute settlement, and the degree to which WTO rules on fisheries subsidies should incorporate environmental as well as commercial elements.

Labelling

Environmental labelling schemes are complex, causing concerns about developing countries' and small businesses' ability to export. Labelling is one of the subjects assigned to the Committee on Trade and Environment (CTE). It is part of an item (3b) on the committee's work programme in which the committee is assigned to consider the relationship between the provisions of the WTO's agreements and the requirements governments make for products in order to protect the environment. (In addition to labelling, this includes standards and technical regulations, and packaging, and recycling requirements.)

In 2001, the Doha Ministerial Conference made this an issue of special focus for the regular CTE (i.e. the regular committee sessions that are not part of the Doha Round negotiations). The use of eco-labels (i.e. labelling products according to environmental criteria) by governments, industry and non-governmental organizations (NGOs) is increasing. Concerns have been raised about the growing complexity and diversity of environmental labelling schemes. This is especially the case with labelling based on life-cycle analysis, which looks at a product's environmental effects from the first stages of its production to its final disposal. These requirements could create difficulties for developing countries, and particularly small and medium-sized enterprises in export markets.

WTO members generally agree that labelling schemes can be economically efficient and useful for informing consumers, and tend to restrict trade less than other methods. This is the case if the schemes are voluntary, allow all sides to participate in their design, based on the market, and transparent. However, these same schemes could be misused to protect domestic producers. For this reason, the schemes should not discriminate between countries and should not create unnecessary barriers or disguised restrictions on international trade.

ELECTION LAW

PAPER CODE- 412

QUESTIONS-

- Q.1- Why filing election petition in India? Explain with help of example?
- Q.2- What is the contents and grounds of election petition in India?
- Q.3- Explain the trail of petition in India with case study?
- Q.4- Election process of President of India?
- Q.5- What is the composition and powers of Election Commission of India?
- Q.6- What is the meaning of qualification and disqualification of the candidate?
- Q.7- Brief the meaning of the office of profit with examples?
- Q.8- Explain the meaning of the government contract?
- Q.9- What is the concept of anti-defection law in India?
- Q.10- Why filing election petition in India? Explain with help of example?
- Q.11- What is the meaning of valid nomination with case study?
- Q.12- What is the grounds of rejection and withdrawal of the nomination of the candidates?
- Q.13- How to recognize political parties and election symbols with example?
- Q.14- What are voters right to know antecedent of the candidates?
- Q.15- Briefly describe the corrupt practice and electoral offences?
- Q.16- Explain the corrupt practice in context to Bribery, Undue influence, character, appeal on the grounds of the religion, race, caste etc.?
- Q.17- Explain the Criminalization of politics?
- Q.18- What is the modal code of conduct? Explain with the help of examples?
- Q.19- Briefly describe the opinion, exit polls and exact polls?
- Q.20- What is the importance of electronic media and social media in regards to political parties in India?

ANSWERS-

- **Answer 1** - An election petition refers to the procedure for challenging the result of a Parliamentary election.

When a petition is lodged against an election return, there are 4 possible outcomes:^[1]

1. The election is declared void. The result is quashed and a writ is issued for a new election
2. The election is held to have been undue: the original return is quashed, and another candidate is declared to have been elected.
3. The election is upheld, and the member returned is found to have been duly elected.
4. The petition is withdrawn. This may occur when the petitioner fails to attend a hearing, or when Parliament is dissolved before the petition process is complete

FORMAT and EXAMPLE done in class activity

- **Answer 2** - An election petition should consist of –
 - a) concise statement of the material facts on which the petitioner relies
 - b) Full particulars of any corrupt practice that the petitioner alleges, including the names of the parties alleged to have committed such corrupt practice and date and place of the commission of each such practice in the form of an affidavit.
 - c) Any schedule or annexure to the petition shall be signed by the petitioner and verified.
 - d) The petition shall also be accompanied by an affidavit in the prescribed form in support of the allegation of such corrupt practice

Grounds for filing an election petition

The election of a particular candidate can be declared void under section 100 of the Representation of People Act, 1951, if the High Court is of the opinion that -

On the date of his election a returned candidate was not qualified or was disqualified to be chosen to fill the seat. b) Any corrupt practice (as explained below) has been committed by a returned candidate or his election agent or by any other person with the consent of a returned candidate or his election agent. c) By improper acceptance of any nomination. d) By any improper reception, refusal or rejection of any vote or the reception of any vote which is void. e) By any non-compliance with the provisions of the Constitution or RPA or any rules or orders made under this act.

- **Answer 3 -** The Representation of Peoples Act recommends every election petition shall be tried as expeditiously as possible and as far as practicable for the interests of justice. Every endeavor, its suggests, should be made on the part of the High Court to conclude a trial for an election petition within six months from the date on which the election petition is presented to the High Court for trial.
- **Answer 4 - PROCEDURE FOR THE ELECTION OF THE PRESIDENT**

Article 54 of the constitution says:
 “The President shall be elected by the members of an electoral college consisting of –
 (a) The elected members of both Houses of Parliament and
 (b) The elected members of the Legislative Assemblies of the States (including National Capital Territory of Delhi and the Union Territory of Pondicherry vide the Constitution 70th amendment Act, 1992).”

Note: The Electoral College does not include

1. Nominated members of both the Houses of the Parliament
2. Nominated members of State Assemblies
3. Elected as well as nominated members of State Legislative Councils.
4. Nominated members of Legislative Assemblies of Delhi and Pondicherry.

- **Answer 5- Composition of Election Commission**

Article 324 of the Indian Constitution has made the following provisions with regards to the formation of the election commission:

1. The President appoints the Chief Election Commissioner and other election commissioners are appointed by the President of India.
2. When any other EC is so appointed, the Chief Election Commissioner shall act as the Election Commission’s Chairman.
3. The President of India can also appoint the regional commissioners in order to assist the Commission. If necessary after consulting with the Election Commission.
4. The tenure of office and the conditions of service of all the commissioners shall be decided by the President of the country

Powers of Election Commission

1. EC determines the Electoral Constituencies' territorial areas in the entire country on the basis of the Delimitation Commission Act of Parliament.
2. It Prepares and periodically revises the electoral rolling and registering of all eligible voters.
3. Election Commission notifies the schedules and dates of elections and scrutinizing nomination papers.
4. It acts as the court to settle the disputes that concern the granting of recognition to political parties and allocating election symbols to the parties.
5. Election Commission appoints officers for the inquiry of disputes concerning electoral arrangements.
6. Election Commission determines the code of conduct that is to be followed by the political parties and candidates during elections.
7. It prepares a program to publicize the policies of all the political parties on various media like TV and radio during elections.
8. Election Commission advises the President on matters concerning the disqualification of MPs and MLAs.
9. Election Commission holds the power to cancel polls in case of booth capturing, rigging, violence and other irregularities.
10. Election Commission registers political parties and granting them the status of national or state parties (depending on their poll performance).

• Answer 6- Qualifications to Become an MP

As per article 84 of the constitution, a person is qualified to be a member of parliament provided he:

- is a citizen of India
- has completed 30 years of age in case of Rajya Sabha and 25 years in case of Lok Sabha.
- possesses such other qualifications as may be prescribed in that behalf by or under any law made by Parliament.

The third condition above led the parliament to include other qualifications for MPs in the Representation of People Act (1951). These qualifications are as follows:

- Only an elector can be elected. Thus, the candidate must be registered as a voter in a parliamentary constituency and *must be eligible to vote*. If due to any reason the person loses eligibility to vote, he would lose eligibility to contest also. For example if a person is jailed or in lawful detention at the time of elections, he shall *not be eligible for voting*. However, if a person is in preventive custody, he can vote. These define if a person is able to contest for election of MP or not.

- It is not necessary that a person should be registered as a voter in the same constituency. This is applicable for both Lok Sabha and Rajya Sabha.
- A person from reserved category only can contest election if the Lok Sabha seat is reserved for these categories. However, an SC/ST person can contest election on an unreserved seat also.

Disqualification grounds

The constitution of India has provided (in article 102) that a member of parliament will be disqualified for membership if:

- He holds any office of profit under the Union or state government (except that of a minister or any other office exempted by Parliament)
- He is of unsound mind and stands so declared by a court.
- He is an undischarged insolvent.
- He has ceased to be a citizen of India.
- He is disqualified under any *other law by parliament*

The last condition above led the parliament to include some other conditions for disqualification in Representation of People Act (1951). These are as follows:

- He must not have been found guilty of certain election offences and corrupt practices
- He must not have been convicted for any offence that results in imprisonment for two or more years. However, detention under preventive detention law is not disqualification.
- He must not have failed to lodge an account of election expenses within stipulated time.
- He must not have any interest in government contracts, works and services.
- He must not be a director or managing personnel in a company / organization in which government has at least 25% share.
- He must not have been dismissed from government service due to corruption or disloyalty to state.
- He must not have been convicted for promoting enmity between groups.
- He must not have been punished for supporting social crimes such as untouchability, sati, dowry etc.

- **Answer 7-** MPs and MLAs, as members of the legislature, hold the government accountable for its work. The essence of disqualification under the office of profit law is if legislators holds an 'office of profit' under the government, they might be susceptible to government influence, and may not discharge their constitutional mandate fairly. The intent is that there should be no conflict between the duties and interests of an elected member. Hence, the office of profit law simply seeks to enforce a basic feature of the Constitution- the principle of separation of power between the legislature and the executive.

- **According to the definition, what constitutes an ‘office of profit’?**

The law does not clearly define what constitutes an office of profit but the definition has evolved over the years with interpretations made in various court judgments. An office of profit has been interpreted to be a position that brings to the office-holder some financial gain, or advantage, or benefit. The amount of such profit is immaterial.

In 1964, the Supreme Court ruled that the test for determining whether a person holds an office of profit is the test of appointment. Several factors are considered in this determination including factors such as:

- (i) whether the government is the appointing authority,
- (ii) whether the government has the power to terminate the appointment,
- (iii) whether the government determines the remuneration,
- (iv) what is the source of remuneration, and
- (v) the power that comes with the position.

- **What does the Constitution say about holding an ‘office of profit’? Can exemptions be granted under the law?**

Under the provisions of Article 102 (1) and Article 191 (1) of the Constitution, an MP or an MLA (or an MLC) is barred from holding any office of profit under the central or state government. The articles clarify that “a person shall not be deemed to hold an office of profit under the government of India or the government of any state by reason only that he is a minister”. The Constitution specifies that the number of ministers including the Chief Minister has to be within 15% of the total number of members of the assembly (10% in the case of Delhi, which is a union territory with legislature).

Provisions of Articles 102 and 191 also protect a legislator occupying a government position if the office in question has been made immune to disqualification by law. In the recent past, several state legislatures have enacted laws exempting certain offices from the purview of office of profit. Parliament has also enacted the Parliament (Prevention of Disqualification) Act, 1959, which has been amended several times to expand the exempted list.

- **Answer 8-** It is true that in respect of Government Contracts the provisions of Article 299 must be complied with, but that does not mean that the provisions of the Indian Contract Act have been superseded.

In the case of **State of Bihar v Majeed**, the Hon'ble Supreme court held that; It may be noted that like other contracts, a Government Contract is also governed by the Indian Contract Act, yet it is distinct a thing apart. In addition to the requirements of the Indian Contract Act such as offer, acceptance and consideration, a Government Contract has to comply with the provisions of Article 299. Thus subject to the formalities prescribed by Article 299 the contractual liability of the Central or State Government is same as that of any individual under the ordinary law of contract."

As regards the interpretation of contract, there is no distinction between the contracts to which one of the parties is the Government and between the two private parties.

Though there is hardly any distinction between a contract between private parties and Government contract so far as enforceability and interpretation are concerned yet some special privileges are accorded to the Government in the shape of special treatment under statutes of limitation.

Some privileges are also accorded to Government in respect of its ability to impose liabilities with preliminary recourse to the courts. This probably is because of doctrines of executive necessity and public interest.

FORMATION OF GOVERNMENT CONTRACTS

The executive power of the Union of India and the States to carry on any trade or business, acquire, hold and dispose property and make contracts is affirmed by Article 298 of the Constitution of India. If the formal requirements required by article 299 are complied with, the contract can be enforced against the Union or the States.

(1) All contracts made in the exercise of executive power of the union or a state shall be expressed to be made by the President or by the Governor of the State as the case may be, and all such contracts and all assurances of property made in the exercise of that power shall be executed on behalf of the President or the Governor by such person and in such manner as he may direct or authorize.

(2) Neither the President nor the Governor shall be personally liable in respect of any contract or assurance made or executed for the purpose of any enactment relating to Government of India hereto before in force, nor shall any such contract or assurance on behalf of any of them be personally liable in respect thereof. Thus Article 299 lays down three conditions which the contracts made in the exercise of the executive power of the Center or a State must fulfill to be valid –

The contract must be expressed to be made by the president or the Governor as the case may be;

These contracts made in the exercise of the executive power are to be executed on behalf of the President/Governor as the case may be; and

The execution must be by such person and in such manner as the President or the Governor of the case as the case may be, may direct or authorize. The expression "executed" does not by itself contemplate execution of a formal contract by the executing parties. A tender for the purchase of goods in pursuance of a tender notice, notification or statement inviting tenders issued by or on behalf of the President or the Governor, as the case may be, and acceptance in writing which is expressed to be made in the name of the President or Governor and is executed on his behalf by a person authorized in that behalf would fulfill the requirements of Article 299(1). If these requirements are fulfilled, a valid contract may result from the correspondence.

- **Answer 9- ANTI-DEFECTION LAW**

Aaya Ram Gaya Ram was a phrase that became popular in Indian politics after a Haryana MLA Gaya Lal changed his party thrice within the same day in 1967. The anti-defection law sought to prevent such political defections which may be due to reward of office or other similar considerations.

The Tenth Schedule was inserted in the Constitution in 1985. It lays down the process by which legislators may be disqualified on grounds of defection by the Presiding Officer of a legislature based on a petition by any other member of the House. A legislator is deemed to have defected if he either voluntarily gives up the membership of his party or disobeys the directives of the party leadership on a vote. This implies that a legislator defying (abstaining or voting against) the party whip on any issue can lose his membership of the House. The law applies to both Parliament and state assemblies.

1. Are there any exceptions under the law?

Yes, legislators may change their party without the risk of disqualification in certain circumstances. The law allows a party to merge with or into another party provided that at least two-thirds of its legislators are in favor of the merger. In such a scenario, neither the members who decide to merge, nor the ones who stay with the original party will face disqualification.

Various expert committees have recommended that rather than the Presiding Officer, the decision to disqualify a member should be made by the President (in case of MPs) or the Governor (in case of MLAs) on the advice of the Election Commission. This would be similar to the process followed for disqualification in case the person holds an office of profit (i.e. the person holds an office under the central or state government which carries a remuneration, and has not been excluded in a list made by the legislature).

- **Answer 10-** An election petition refers to the procedure for challenging the result of a [Parliamentary](#) election.

When a petition is lodged against an election return, there are 4 possible outcomes:[\[1\]](#)

5. The election is declared void. The result is quashed and a writ is issued for a new election
6. The election is held to have been undue: the original return is quashed, and another candidate is declared to have been elected.
7. The election is upheld, and the member returned is found to have been duly elected.

8. The petition is withdrawn. This may occur when the petitioner fails to attend a hearing, or when Parliament is dissolved before the petition process is complete

FORMAT and EXAMPLE done in class activity

- **Answer 11-** On or before the date appointed under clause (a) of section 30 each candidate shall, either in person or by his proposer, between the hours of eleven O'clock in the forenoon and three O'clock in the afternoon deliver to the returning officer at the place specified in this behalf in the notice issued under section 31 a nomination paper completed in the prescribed form and signed by the candidate and by an elector of the constituency as proposer: Provided that a candidate not set up by a recognized political party, shall not be deemed to be duly nominated for election from a constituency unless the nomination paper is subscribed by ten proposers being electors of the constituency: Provided further that no nomination paper shall be delivered to the returning officer on a day which is a public holiday: Provided also that in the case of a local authorities' constituency, graduates' constituency or teachers' constituency, the reference to —an elector of the constituency as proposer shall be construed as a reference to ten per cent of the electors of the constituency or ten such electors, whichever is less, as proposers. Notwithstanding anything contained in sub-section (1), for election to the Legislative Assembly of Sikkim (deemed to be the Legislative Assembly of that State duly constituted under the Constitution), the nomination paper to be delivered to the returning officer shall be in such form and manner as may be prescribed: Provided that the said nomination paper shall be subscribed by the candidate as assenting to the nomination, and—

(a) In the case of a seat reserved for Sikkimese of Bhutia-Lepcha origin, also by at least twenty electors of the constituency as proposers and twenty electors of the constituency as seconders;

(b) In the case of a seat reserved for Sanghas, also by at least twenty electors of the constituency as proposers and at least twenty electors of the constituency as seconders;

(c) In the case of a seat reserved for Sikkimese of Nepali origin, by an elector of the constituency as proposer: Provided further that no nomination paper shall be delivered to the returning officer on a day which is a public holiday. In a constituency where any seat is reserved, a candidate shall not be deemed to be qualified to be chosen to fill that seat unless his nomination paper contains a declaration by him specifying the particular caste or tribe of which he is a member and the area in relation to which that caste or tribe is a Scheduled Caste or, as the case may be, a Scheduled Tribe of the State. Where the candidate is a person who, having held any office referred to in 1[section 9] has been dismissed and a period of five years has not elapsed since the dismissal, such person shall not be deemed to be duly nominated as a candidate unless his nomination paper is accompanied by a certificate issued in the prescribed manner by the Election Commission to the effect that he has not been dismissed for corruption or disloyalty to the State. On the presentation of a nomination paper, the returning officer shall satisfy himself that the names and electoral roll numbers of the candidate and his proposer as entered in the nomination paper are the same as those entered in the electoral rolls: Provided that no misnomer or inaccurate description or clerical, technical or printing error in regard to the name of the candidate or his proposer or any other person, or in regard to any place, mentioned in the electoral roll or the nomination paper and no clerical, technical or printing error in regard to the electoral roll numbers of any such person in the electoral roll or the nomination paper, shall affect the full operation of the electoral roll or the nomination paper with respect to such person or place in any case where the description in regard to the name of the person or place is such as to be commonly understood; and the returning officer shall permit any such misnomer or inaccurate description or clerical, technical or printing error to be corrected and where necessary, direct that any such misnomer, inaccurate description, clerical, technical or printing error in the electoral roll or in the nomination paper shall be overlooked. Where the candidate is an elector of a different constituency, a copy of the electoral roll of that constituency or of the relevant part thereof or a certified copy of the relevant entries in such roll shall, unless it has been filed along with the nomination paper, be produced before the returning officer at the time of scrutiny. Nothing in this section shall prevent any candidate from being nominated by more than one nomination paper: Provided that not more than four nomination papers shall be presented by or on behalf of any candidate or accepted by the returning officer for election in the same constituency. Notwithstanding anything

contained in sub-section or in any other provisions of this Act, a person shall not be nominated as a candidate for election,—

(a) in the case of a general election to the House of the People (whether or not held simultaneously from all Parliamentary constituencies), from more than two Parliamentary constituencies;

(b) in the case of a general election to the Legislative Assembly of a State (whether or not held simultaneously from all Assembly constituencies), from more than two Assembly constituencies in that State;

(c) in the case of a biennial election to the Legislative Council of a State having such Council, from more than two Council constituencies in the State;

(d) in the case of a biennial election to the Council of States for filling two or more seats allotted to a State, for filling more than two such seats;

(e) in the case of bye-elections to the House of the People from two or more Parliamentary constituencies which are held simultaneously, from more than two such Parliamentary constituencies;

(f) in the case of bye-elections to the Legislative Assembly of a State from two or more Assembly constituencies which are held simultaneously, from more than two such Assembly constituencies;

(g) in the case of bye-elections to the Council of States for filling two or more seats allotted to a State, which are held simultaneously, for filling more than two such seats;

(h) in the case of bye-elections to the Legislative Council of a State having such Council from two or more Council constituencies which are held simultaneously, from more than two such Council constituencies. Explanation.—For the purposes of this sub-section, two or more bye-elections shall be deemed to be held simultaneously where the notification calling such bye-elections are issued by the Election Commission under sections 147, 149, 150 or, as the case may be, 151 on the same date.

- **Answer 12- Withdrawal of candidature.**—

(1) Any candidate may withdraw his candidature by a notice in writing which shall contain such particulars as may be prescribed and shall be subscribed by him and delivered before three O'clock in the afternoon on the day fixed under clause (c) of section 30 to the returning officer either by such candidate in person or by his proposer, or election agent who has been authorized in this behalf in writing by such candidate.

(2) No person who has given a notice or withdrawal of his candidature under sub-section (1) shall be allowed to cancel the notice.

(3) The returning officer shall, on being satisfied as to the genuineness of a notice or withdrawal and the identity of the person delivering it under sub-section (1), cause the notice to be affixed in some conspicuous place in his office.

- **Answer 13-** Once a political party registers itself with the Central Election Commission, a party gets recognized as a State party or a national party depending on their performance in the elections. The recognition is accorded by the Central Election Commission on the basis of the Election symbols reservation and allocation order 1968.
- **The Election symbols reservation and allocation order aims to**
 - Provide for specification, reservation, choice and allotment of symbols at elections in Parliamentary and Assembly Constituencies
 - For the recognition of political parties
- **Conditions for recognition as a national party**

Under Section 6A of Election symbols reservation and allocation order, a political party becomes eligible to be recognized as a national party if it fulfils any one of the three following conditions

 - The party has won 2 per cent of seats in the Lok Sabha (11 seats) from at least three different States in the latest general election.
 - In an election to the Lok Sabha or Legislative Assembly, the party has polled 6 per cent of the total valid votes in at least four States, in addition to winning four Lok Sabha seats.
 - A party has got recognition as a State party in at least four States.
- **Conditions for recognition as a State party**

Under Section 6B of Election symbols reservation and allocation order, a political party becomes eligible to be recognized as a State party if it fulfils any one of the four following conditions.

- – At general elections or Legislative Assembly elections, the party has won 3 per cent of seats in the Legislative Assembly of the State (subject to a minimum of 3 seats).
- – At a Lok Sabha general elections, the party has won 1 Lok Sabha seat for every 25 Lok Sabha seat allotted for the State.
- – At a general election to Lok Sabha or Legislative Assembly, the party has polled minimum of 6 per cent of votes in a State and in addition it has won 1 Lok Sabha or 2 Legislative Assembly seats.
- – At a general election to Lok Sabha or Legislative Assembly, the party has polled 8 per cent of votes in a State.
- **Advantages of being recognized as a national party/ State party include**
 - Party recognized as a national party is entitled to a reserved symbol for its candidates contesting from across the country. Similarly a party recognized as a State party is entitled to a reserved symbol for its candidates contesting in that State. This is critical for political parties since a large section of voters in the country are illiterate and depend on symbols to identify the party they want to vote for. Having a pan-India symbol helps parties reach out to prospective voters.
 - Candidates from a national party or State party require only one proposer to file their nominations and are entitled to two sets of electoral rolls free of cost.
 - Recognized parties get dedicated broadcast slots on public broadcasters Doordarshan and All India Radio during the general elections.
 - Further, recognized political parties are entitled to nominate ‘star campaigners’ during general elections.
 - A recognized party can have a maximum of 40 ‘star campaigners’ while a registered unrecognized party can nominate a maximum of 20 ‘star campaigners’, whose travel expenses are not accounted for in the election expense accounts of candidates.
- **Answer 14-** The Court further observed that **voter’s fundamental right to know antecedents of a candidate is independent of statutory rights under the election law.** A voter is first a citizen of India and apart from this statutory right, he is having Fundamental Rights conferred by the Constitution.

- **Answer 15- CONCEPT OF CORRUPT PRACTICES**

The essence of a democratic election is freedom of choice. In modern times elections have been primarily associated with the system of representative form of government.

- In all democratic countries of the world the electoral systems were established on the basis of the natural right of the individuals.

- Corrupt practices is basically a general term and include bribery undue influence etc. having specific reference to electoral systems.
- Such practices were declared against the law by many nations in the beginning of 19th century as these were considered interferences in the free exercise of right to vote.

THERE ARE 8 TYPES OF ACTS WHICH ARE REGARDED AS CORRUPT PRACTICES.

BRIBERY-

- Undue influence;
- Appeal on the ground of religion, race, caste, community, language, religious symbols or national symbols;
- Promotion of enmity or hatred between different classes of citizens of India on grounds of religion, race, caste, community of language;
- Publication of false statement in relation to the personal character or conduct of any candidate;
- Illegal hiring or procuring of vehicles or the use of such vehicles for free conveyance of voters;
- Incurring or authorizing election expenditure in excess of the prescribed limit; and
- Obtaining or procuring assistance from Government servants of specified categories.

ELECTORAL OFFENCES-

- In addition to the corrupt practices at elections, various acts of commission and omission have been termed as electoral offences.
- While the commission of a corrupt practice, if found proved, might cost the elected candidate his election, the commission of an electoral offence would expose a person who commits it for penal consequences.

Further a person committing electoral offence is liable to punishment irrespective of the fact whether such act was done by him with the consent of the candidate or not.

TYPES OF ELECTORAL OFFENCE

Promoting Enmity between Classes of Citizens in Connection with Election

- Prohibition of Public Meetings during the Specified Period
- Disturbance at Election Meetings during the Specified Period
- Restrictions on Printing of Pamphlets, Posters etc.
- Maintenance of Secrecy of Voting Officers etc., at Elections not to Act for Candidates or to Influence Electors
- Prohibition of Canvassing in or Near Polling Station
- Disorderly Conduct in or near Polling Station

• **Answer** **16-**

BRIBERY

while exercising his franchise, a voter should be guided by his reason and not by extraneous considerations brought to bear upon him by inducement.

- The election law makes 'bribery' as the first and the foremost corrupt practice. 'Bribery' as defined has wide amplitude and covers as large a field as possible of activity which may take the form of inducement affecting any electoral work.
- The corrupt practice of bribery is committed not only by a person who provides gratification, but also by the person who accepts such gratification.
- The receipt of, or any agreement to receive, any gratification, whether as a motive or a reward, by a person for standing or not standing as a candidate or for withdrawing or not withdrawing his candidature or for voting or refraining from voting also amounts to a corrupt practice.
- The receipt of any such gratification not merely for himself but for any other person with a view to inducing or attempting to induce such other person to vote or not to vote or to withdraw or not to withdraw his candidature at an election is equally prohibited.
- But the payment made to a candidate not to withdraw when the last date for withdrawal of candidatures is already over may not amount to corrupt practice of bribery.

UNDUE INFLUENCE

- The second type of corrupt practice is undue influence.
- Undue influence, as defined in the law, is wide in its term and contemplates four distinct forms of interference with the free exercise of any electoral right, namely, direct interference, indirect interference, direct attempt at interference or indirect attempt at interference.
- Electoral right means the right of a person to stand or not to stand as a -candidate or to withdraw or not to withdraw from being a candidate or to vote or refrain from voting at an election.
- Any interference or attempt at interference at such electoral right whether direct or indirect is corrupt practice.
- However, such direct or indirect interference or attempt to interference must be with the consent of the candidate or his election agent.

APPEAL ON GROUND OF RELIGION etc.

- Purity of election demands that considerations of religion, race, caste, community or language of the candidate should not play any role in his election and such considerations should not influence the voters while exercising their franchise.
- The election law, therefore, specifies that an appeal on the ground of religion, race, caste, community or language of a candidate is a corrupt practice
- An appeal on the ground of religion would be a corrupt practice even if the rival candidates belong to the same religion.

Answer **17-**

1. Criminalization of Politics means that the criminals entering the politics and contesting elections and even getting elected to the Parliament and state legislature.
2. It takes place primarily because of the nexus between the criminals and some of the politicians.

The criminals need the patronage of politicians occupying public offices to continue with their criminal activities and the politicians need the money and

muscle power that the criminals can offer to the politicians to win elections. In course of time, the nexus led the criminals themselves to contest elections.

REASONS:

- In every election all parties without exception put up candidates with a criminal background. Even though some of us whine about the decision taken by the parties, the general trend is that these candidates are elected to office.
- By acting in such a manner, we fail to realize that the greatest power that democracy arms the people is to vote incompetent people out of power.
- The evident link between criminality and the probability of winning is further reinforced when we look at the win ability of a candidate.
- While any random candidate has one in eight chances of winning a Lok Sabha seat, a candidate facing criminal charges is twice as likely to win as a clean candidate.

Answer 18-

MODEL CODE OF CONDUCT

- No party or candidate shall include in any activity which may aggravate existing differences or create mutual hatred or cause tension between different castes and communities, religious or linguistic.
- Criticism of other political parties, when made, shall be confined to their policies and programme, past record and work. Parties and Candidates shall refrain from criticism of all aspects of private life, not connected with the public activities of the leaders or workers of other parties. Criticism of other parties or their workers based on unverified allegations or distortion shall be avoided.
- There shall be no appeal to caste or communal feelings for securing votes. Mosques, Churches, Temples or other places of worship shall not be used as forum for election propaganda.
- All parties and candidates shall avoid scrupulously all activities which are “corrupt practices” and offences under the election law, such as bribing of voters, intimidation of voters, impersonation of voters, canvassing within 100 meters of polling stations, holding public meetings during the period of 48 hours ending

with the hour fixed for the close of the poll, and the transport and conveyance of voters to and from polling station.

- The right of every individual for peaceful and undisturbed home-life shall be respected, however much the political parties or candidates may resent his political opinions or activities. Organizing demonstrations or picketing before the houses of individuals by way of protesting against their opinions or activities shall not be resorted to under any circumstances.
- No political party or candidate shall permit its or his followers to make use of any individual's land, building, compound wall etc., without his permission for erecting flag-staffs, suspending banners, pasting notices, writing slogans etc.
- Political parties and candidates shall ensure that their supporters do not create obstructions in or break up meetings and processions organized by other parties.
- Workers or sympathizers of one political party shall not create disturbances at public meetings organized by another political party by putting questions orally or in writing or by distributing leaflets of their own party. Processions shall not be taken out by one party along places at which meetings are held by another party. Posters issued by one party shall not be removed by workers of another party.

Answer 19- OPINION AND EXIT POLLS

- Opinion poll is an inquiry into public opinion conducted by interviewing on random sample of people before actual Election Day and it includes all people who may or may not vote.
- On the contrary, Exit poll is taken of a sample of voters leaving the polling booth who have actually cast their votes.
- Their verdict is definite and indicates the final results and can be used to predict the outcome of an election.
- While exit poll has no bearing on election results, the opinion poll do influence the election and as a result, some political parties are not in favor of opinion poll.
- If not adulterated opinion polls are useful in many ways. Now a day's people are educated and they know very well the importance of a good political system. Every party tries to woo people by their campaigns and promise to fulfill their dream if voted to power.

- People look at these campaigns carefully and select candidates whom they think has capability to fulfill their aspirations.
- In spite of such criticism, opinion polls are necessary as they are useful in deciding the most favored party before the elections, provided if they are conducted with full honesty. Also it helps undecided voters to decide the right candidate.
- However, opinion poll is not the sole criteria for choosing the political party or candidates. In fact many people do not care about opinion poll results at all. They select their candidate using their own wisdom and sometime also keep opinion poll results in mind.
- So banning of opinion poll is not a good idea in a democratic country like ours. Even having restrictions on it is undesirable.
- **Answer 20-** It was more than a decade, when internet marked as a powerful medium of communication globally.
- Due to technological reach and access, it was more vocal in the developed countries and developing countries like India.
- The world witnessed real command of internet during the presidential election campaigning of the year 2000 when in the US the internet provided a new interactivity tool of direct conversation between the candidate and voters.
- From then it is continuously growing leap and bound and have become an integral part of the communications in political campaign.
- As public access to the Internet has surged past 70 percent of the US population, the Internet has claimed front-and-center status and campaign strategies
- Social media is definitely playing a crucial role in opinion formation as well as mobilization of masses.
- The best example is the way public movements against existing governments were coordinated and carried out in the Arab world.
- In India governments have been using the social media to propagate the welfare activities carried out by them and to reach the public at large to address their grievances.

- However, post Anna's movement for Jan Lokpal the usage of social media for creating political consciousness and organizing mass movements has grown by leaps and bounds.
- As John Dewey put it, there are two types of knowledge: that of the spectator and that of the actor or participant. Studying how CMC is being used for social and political change appeals mostly to the latter category
- Social media orients and influences the political community till a certain point. The information level has been increased through social media along with the enabling of feedback from all the directions.

Yet, there is an undecided middle ground in terms of voting behavior. The country is going through a process of social churning. Social media is certainly playing role of a neutralizer/nullifying medium.



तेजस्वि नावधीतमस्तु
ISO 9001:2015 & 14001:2015